THE TEACH YOURSELF BOOKS
EDITED BY LEONARD CUTTS

CHINESE
Uniform with this volume
and in the same
series

Teach Yourself Afrikaans
Teach Yourself Arabic
Teach Yourself Colloquial Arabic
Teach Yourself Czech
Teach Yourself Danish
Teach Yourself Dutch
Teach Yourself English for Swahili-speaking People
Teach Yourself English Grammar
Teach Yourself Good English
Teach Yourself Esperanto
Teach Yourself Finnish
Teach Yourself French
Teach Yourself Everyday French
Teach Yourself French Grammar
Teach Yourself Italian Phrase Book
Teach Yourself German
Teach Yourself German Grammar
Teach Yourself More German
Teach Yourself German Phrase Book
Teach Yourself German Reader
Teach Yourself Greek
Teach Yourself New Testament Greek
Teach Yourself Modern Greek
Teach Yourself Hebrew
Teach Yourself Icelandic
Teach Yourself Irish
Teach Yourself Italian
Teach Yourself Italian Phrase Book
Teach Yourself Japanese
Teach Yourself Latin
Teach Yourself Malay
Teach Yourself Norwegian
Teach Yourself Old English
Teach Yourself Modern Persian
Teach Yourself Polish
Teach Yourself Portuguese
Teach Yourself Russian
Teach Yourself Russian Phrase Book
Teach Yourself Samoan
Teach Yourself Serbo-Croat
Teach Yourself Serbo-Croatian Phrase Book
Teach Yourself Spanish
Teach Yourself Everyday Spanish
Teach Yourself Spanish Phrase Book
Teach Yourself Swahili
Teach Yourself Swedish
Teach Yourself Swedish Phrase Book
Teach Yourself Turkish
Teach Yourself Urdu
Teach Yourself Welsh
This volume is published in the U.S.A. by
David McKay Company Inc., 750 Third Avenue,
New York, N.Y. 10017

Printed in Great Britain for the English Universities Press Ltd.,
by Cox and Wyman Ltd.,
London, Reading and Fakenham
PREFACE

Much of the world's progress in mutual understanding and co-operation depends on our being able to understand one another's speech, and on our acquaintance with each other's literature. With the idea of contributing a little towards these worthy objectives, I have prepared this short introduction to the language of the Chinese people, many of whom I have learned to respect, and whose culture I greatly admire.

I am conscious of many imperfections in the work, which has been prepared mainly in the course of long journeys.

I am greatly indebted to many friends who have co-operated with me in preparing the book for publication. Such include Mr. and Mrs. Su Cheng of the Chinese section of the B.B.C. who, with other Chinese co-workers there, have helped with the Chinese translation of the dialogues. In addition Mr. Su has written the whole of the Chinese characters at the end of the book. Professor Edwards of the School of Oriental Studies has given me many helpful suggestions, and I have found Professor Simon's book on the Study and Writing of Chinese Characters most useful. The Rev. A. J. Garnier, formerly General Secretary of the Christian Literature Society for China, has rendered generous help in the reading of the proofs. He has also prepared the valuable Dictionary and Character
Index at the end of the volume. I owe much also to my wife and daughter Evelyn for work on the manuscript itself.

Finally I should like to express my thanks to my publishers for their patience in waiting for the manuscript and for many courtesies attendant upon the preparation of the work for publication.

H. R. Williamson.
## CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Introduction</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guide to Pronunciation</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spelling Chart of Chinese Words</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduction to the Dialogues—Notes on the Tone</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dialogues</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. A friend arrives</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. The Chinese teacher arrives</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Conversation with Chinese teacher</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Illustrating basic rules A</td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. &quot; &quot; &quot; &quot; B.</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Discussion on domestic matters</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. A Chinese and a foreigner meet</td>
<td>72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. &quot; &quot; &quot; &quot; &quot; (cont.)</td>
<td>84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. On the use of the numerals, A &amp; B</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. Discussing the time, etc.</td>
<td>102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. &quot; &quot;</td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. Windows, doors, wages and the well</td>
<td>118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. Domestic matters, (various)</td>
<td>130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14. Weights and Measures</td>
<td>140</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15. A talk with the cook</td>
<td>148</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16. Hiring a rickshaw</td>
<td>156</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17. An intimate personal matter</td>
<td>162</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18. Expressions of comparison</td>
<td>172</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
19. At the drapery store .......................... 180
20. At the shoe shop .............................. 188
21. Lighting, heating, etc. ....................... 194
22. Washing, waking, wages, etc. ............... 200
23. The week’s work in the home ................ 206
24. Talking accounts with the cook .............. 214
25. Travelling by road ............................ 222
26. Travelling by train ............................ 232
27. Travelling by steamer and train .............. 242
28. Some common idioms .......................... 250
29. Clothing and personal matters ............... 256
30. Discussion on tones, dialects, etc. ......... 262
31. On time idioms ............................... 270
32. Talk with a Chinese official ................. 276
33. Doctor and patient ............................ 286
34. Personal characteristics and relationships . 294
35. On scissors, the tailor, etc. ................. 300
36. Idiomatic phrases ............................. 306
37. A walk in the country .......................... 312
38. Proverbs ........................................ 322
39. In the city ...................................... 330
40. On war and peace ............................. 340

**Chinese Text of the Dialogues** ................. 353

**Grammar Notes** .................................. 425

**Character Index in the Written Form** ........ 437

**How to Use a Dictionary from the Radicals** .. 503

**Index to Chinese Characters Alphabetically**

Arranged ........................................... 517
INTRODUCTION

This book is issued in the hope that it will be useful to many who desire to acquaint themselves with the elements of the spoken and written language of the Chinese people. As a student of the language for nearly forty years I am well acquainted with the difficulties which confront the student who may have to work without the aid of a Chinese teacher. But I can assure the student at the outset, that if he or she will persevere for a period of six months, concentrating for two hours daily, genuine and satisfying progress will be made.

I recommend strongly that two friends should if possible study together. The main section of the book consists of forty dialogues. These should be recited aloud. If you can form a small group for study, the dialogues might be recited by couples in turn for the benefit and criticism of the rest. If you are working alone, by all means read the dialogues aloud, and endeavour to memorise them. As they are arranged in the main as connected discourses, memorising should be quite feasible.

If there should be a Chinese who knows the National Language (kuo yü) in your neighbourhood, avail yourself of his help. Your main difficulty will lie in acquiring the correct intonation of the words, and the right rhythm of the phrases and sentences. The best progress in this connection will be achieved by reading or conversing with a Chinese.

There are about 1,200 different characters in the book. These, if thoroughly learned, will enable the student to converse freely on matters of everyday importance. I urge the student to write the Chinese characters as the best means of memorising them, as the book is designed
to enable the student to read and write Basic Chinese as well as to speak it.

Don't let the difficulty of intonation unduly discourage you. For your comfort let me say that intonation varies considerably in different parts of China, and that the Chinese themselves experience difficulty in this respect as they move about the country.

**Plan and Scope of the Book**

1. *Sound Tables, Spelling Chart, Romanisation, Tone-marks.*

After reading this Introductory Chapter, the student should make himself thoroughly acquainted with the Table of Sounds and the Spelling Chart. From these it will be seen that there are 409 different sounds in the language, and that these are built up from sixty-two basic syllables, either independently or in combination.

No system of Romanisation has as yet been devised which reproduces the sounds of the Chinese language with perfect accuracy. But the divergencies between the sounds as actually spoken, and as reproduced by the system of Romanisation adopted in this book, are so slight that no discouragement need be felt on that account.

The system of Romanisation adopted is that of the late Sir Thomas Wade. The writer has found that system extremely helpful himself, and many of the better known writers of Chinese text-books and dictionaries, both British and American, like Hillier, Goodrich, Soothill, Giles, Wells-Williams and MacGillivray, adopted it. Dictionaries and text-books by these noted sinologues are likely to be on the market for many years to come. The Chinese Government has recently promulgated a new system of Romanisation which aims at showing the tone as well as the actual pronunciation of the words without extraneous aids. But as yet there are no dictionaries published in that particular system, and that
is a serious obstacle to those who want to study Chinese now.

The tones are marked by numbers, 1, 2, 3 and 4, both in the vocabularies which accompany the dialogues, and in connection with the Chinese character index which is included at the end of the book. This also is in line with the method adopted by the aforementioned scholars.

2. The Dialogues.

There are forty dialogues on various topics designed to make the student familiar with the terminology of everyday affairs, domestic, social, travel, personal, political and the like. The selection of the themes of these dialogues has been guided by a desire to meet the need of a student making his first contacts with the Chinese people.

Chinese is a living language, and is constantly changing in form and terminology. I have sought with expert Chinese assistance to select phrases and sentences as they are spoken by Chinese of average intelligence to-day. A few phrases of modern newspaper Chinese are introduced here and there, and I have not ignored altogether the older and picturesque language of Chinese etiquette. But the aim of the writer is to make the student feel at home with the ordinary folk in China to-day. The language is rich in proverbial expressions, and so I have devoted one lesson to that particular aspect of the colloquial.

8. The Vocabularies.

Each dialogue is accompanied by a vocabulary, which includes the new characters as they appear in Romanised and Chinese form, with their meaning and intonation. Most Chinese characters have many meanings. The vocabularies do not give exhaustive definitions of the characters. But the particular meaning of the character as found in the lesson under review is given, together
with the other more important meanings as found in the popular dictionaries.

4. The Notes.

Each dialogue also is followed by a few short notes, consisting chiefly of idiomatical and grammatical comments, designed to introduce the student gradually to the chief idioms and rules.

5. The Chinese Text of the Dialogues.

This section follows the dialogues in the Romanised form. Some students will perhaps choose to confine themselves to the Romanised section, and the writer knows many good speakers of Chinese who scarcely recognise a single Chinese character. But it is hoped that the student will include this section in his studies, as it will not only add to his interest in the spoken language, but will also prepare him for reading a Chinese newspaper, most of which are now printed in the colloquial style.

The two sections are separated in the book so that the student can test himself by trying to reproduce the Chinese from the English and Romanised section, and vice versa. That is one of the most profitable ways of learning the language. The student will note that the lessons in the Chinese section read from right to left and from top to bottom of the page. That is the way that Chinese is printed.

6. The Grammar Section.

The writer has endeavoured to introduce the student to the main rules of grammar gradually and piecemeal in the dialogues. But it seemed advisable to gather up the basic rules in this special section, which has been kept as compact as possible. The student can refer to this section at any time in the course of his study. The main purpose, however, in the mind of the student should
be to memorise the dialogues, sentence by sentence, phrase by phrase. If that is done the rules of grammar will be unconsciously acquired. Do not be too analytic in your approach to Chinese. Remember that a sentence in Chinese is the equivalent of a sentence in English. In other words, acquaint yourself with ideas and thoughts as they are expressed, rather than with individual words.


All the characters found in the dialogues have been reproduced as a Chinese writes them, and collated at the end of the book in the order in which they appear in the body of the book. The short introduction to this section gives the student the main rules of writing Chinese. He will be well advised to copy these characters, not only for the artistic interest which this will impart, but also for the aid it will afford to the memory. May I repeat that the best way to memorise the Chinese characters is to write them.

This section also forms a dictionary of the book, and is followed by a few paragraphs to guide the student in the use of a Chinese dictionary by means of the 214 Radicals.

In conclusion let me say that anyone of average intelligence and perseverance can gain a working knowledge of Chinese. So in the words of one of the Chinese proverbs which you will find in the book: "Don't mind going slow, as long as you keep going."
GUIDE TO PRONUNCIATION

This Chart or Guide represents an attempt to reproduce in the letters of the English alphabet the sounds of Chinese words as they are pronounced in the National or Official language. Admittedly any attempt of this kind is open to criticism, as the pronunciation of certain Chinese words cannot be exactly reproduced by the letters of the English alphabet. But the following table, comprising 409 different sounds, will be found to approximate sufficiently closely to the generally accepted Chinese pronunciation.

The system of "orthography" adopted is that of the late Sir Thomas Wade, which is found in the popular dictionaries and text-books produced by British and American scholars, like Wells-Williams, Giles, MacGillivray, Hillier, Soothill, etc.

The famous dictionary of K’ang-Hsi contains over 40,000 different Chinese characters. Giles’ dictionary contains 10,859. But the actual number of different sounds (if we exclude for the moment the device of "intonation", which multiplies the sounds by anything from four to eight times this number, according to the district in which the language is spoken), is just over four hundred, accepting the limitation referred to in the first paragraph above.

The multiplication of basic sounds arrived at by "intonation" will be referred to separately.

Here then are the 409 different sounds found in Chinese.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Written form.</th>
<th>Approximate sound in English spelling.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>A. Ah!</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>Ai or Ngai.</td>
<td>I as in bind, or ngai, the -ng being the final sound of -ing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>An or Ngan.</td>
<td>As in man.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
4. Ang or Ngang. Ahng.
5. Ao or Ngao. Ow as in how, owl, etc.
8. Chai. Ji, the -j sound being the equivalent of the soft g in gibe.
11. Ch’an. Chann as in channel.
15. Ch’ao. Chow, the Peking dog, or chow as in chowder.
16. Chê. Jer as in Jeremiah, the -ch being the equivalent of the soft g in germ.
17. Ch’ê. Cher as in cherish.
21. Ch’êng. Chung, the “ung” as in bung.
23. Ch’i. Chee as in cheese.
24. Chia. Jyah, the “y” being as short -i in bin, the whole being something like the -jia in Fujiama.
25. Ch’ia. Chyah, the medial “y” being like short -i as in chin.
26. Ch’iai or K’ai. Chi-eye, the -i being short as in chin, the -kai as in kite.
27. Chiang. Jiahng, the -i being short.
28. Ch’iang. Chiahng, the -i being short.
29. Chiao. Jiow, the -i being short and “ow” as in how.
30. Ch’iao. Chiow, the -i being short and “ow” as in how.
81. Chieh. Jyeh, the -yeh being equivalent of -ye in yes, preceded by a short -i, e.g., jiye, the whole sound being like -gia in collegian.

32. Ch‘ieh. Chyeh, the yeh being equivalent of ye in yes, preceded by a short -i.

33. Chien. Jyen, the en sounding like the en in enter, and the -y like a short -i as in bin.

34. Ch‘ien. Chyen, the en sounding like the en in enter, and the -y like a short -i as in bin.

35. Chih. Jirr, like the initial sound in giraffe.

36. Ch‘ih. Chirr, the nearest being the chir in chiroprist.

37. Chin. Jin, the -j being like soft -g in ginger.

38. Ch‘in. Chin as in English or as in chink.


40. Ch‘ing. Ching as heard in chink, without the final “k”.

41. Chio. Jeo or as -gio in prodigious.

42. Ch‘io. Cheo, the -eo as in geology.

43. Chiu. Ju or Jew or Jioo, but the short -i sound must be pronounced between the -j and the -oo.

44. Ch‘iu. Chu or chioo, the -i being short as in bin, and the -oo sounding like -oo in ooze (cf. chew). For the above two sounds, parallels may be found in deuce, the -eu coming fairly close to the -iu of the Chinese, or tune, where the -u approximates fairly closely to the -iu in the Chinese.

45. Chiung. Jyung, in which the -y is like a short -i as in bin, and the -ung is sounded like -ong in mongrel. In fact it is practically the Lancashire hung as in hunger, hungry and the like.

46. Ch‘iung. Chyung. And see the last.
47. Cho. Joh as in John, but drawled slightly like jorn, horn.
48. Ch’o. Ch’oh, the -oh as in chores.
49. Chou. Joe as in Jones.
50. Ch’ou. Choe as in anchovy.
51. Chu. Ju, the -u as -oo in moon. (N.B.—There is no suggestion of a short -i after the J as suggested for chiu above.)
52. Ch’u. Choo as in choose.
54. Ch’ua. Chwah.
55. Chuai. Jwi, the -i being long as in wine.
56. Ch’uai. Chwi, the -i being long as in wine.
57. Chuan. Jwan, the -an as in man.
58. Ch’uan. Chwan, the -an as in man.
60. Ch’uang. Chwahng.
63. Chun. Jun, the -un being like the -on in motion (the Lancashire -un).
64. Ch’un. Chun, the -un being like the -on in motion (the Lancashire -un).
65. Chung. Jung, the -un being like the -on in motion (the Lancashire -un).
66. Ch’ung. Chung, the -un being like the -on in motion (the Lancashire -un).
67. Ch’uo. Chwo, the -o being short as in lock.
68. Chü. Jü, the -ü being as in French. Say -oo with pursed lips, the tip of the tongue being close to the front teeth.
69. Ch’ü. Chü, the -ü being French as in the last.
70. Chüan. Jüan, the -ü being French and -an as in man.
71. Ch’üan. Chüan, the -ü being French and -an as in man.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Written form</th>
<th>Approximate sound in English spelling</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>72.</td>
<td>Chüeh. Jüe, the -ü being French and -e as in yes.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>73.</td>
<td>Ch’üeh. Chüe, the -ü being French and -e as in yes.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>74.</td>
<td>Chün. Jüin, the -ü being French and -i very short.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>75.</td>
<td>Ch’un. Chüin, the -ü being French and -i very short.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>76.</td>
<td>Ê or Ngê. Er as in hesitant speech, or as -er in herd.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>77.</td>
<td>Ên or Ngên. Un as in under.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>78.</td>
<td>Êrh. Er as in her, tip of tongue pointing to roof of the mouth and mouth slightly open.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80.</td>
<td>Fan. As in fancy.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>82.</td>
<td>Fei. Fay as in faint.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>83.</td>
<td>Fên. Fun as in funny.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>84.</td>
<td>Fêng. Fung, the fun as in English.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>85.</td>
<td>Fo. For as in fortune, or the -o as -oa in hoary.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>86.</td>
<td>Fou. Foe, the -oe sounded as the -o in photo.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>87.</td>
<td>Fu. Foo as in fool.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>88.</td>
<td>Ha. Hah as the har in harness, with the -r scarcely sounded.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>89.</td>
<td>Hai. Hi as in high.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90.</td>
<td>Han. Han as in handy.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>92.</td>
<td>Hao. As in how.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>94.</td>
<td>Hei. As in hay.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>95.</td>
<td>Hên. As in hun.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>96.</td>
<td>Hêng. As in hung.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>97.</td>
<td>Ho. Hoar as in hoary.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>98.</td>
<td>Hou. As hoe.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>99.</td>
<td>Hsi. She, although the -h is a little lighter than in the English, with the upper teeth protruding slightly.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100.</td>
<td>Hsia. Shya, the -h being light, the -y being like -i in bin, and the -a being short as in sham.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>101.</td>
<td>Hsiang. Shyahng, the -h being light, the -y being like -i in bin, and the -a being long as in father.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
102. Hsiao. Shyow, the -h being light, the -y being like -i in bin, and the -ow as in how.
103. Hsieh. Shye, the -h being light, the -y being like -i in bin, and the -ye as in yes.
104. Hsien. Shyen, the -h being light, the -y being like -i in bin, and yen like the Japanese coin.
105. Hsin. Shin, the -h being light.
106. Hsing. Shing, the -h being light.
107. Hsio. Sheo, the -h being light, almost as in sheol, with -e like short -i.
108. Hsiu. Shyou, the -h being light and you as in English.
109. Hsiung. Shyung, the -h being light, the -y being like short -in in bin, and the -un in -ung being like the -on in motion.
110. Hsü. Shü, the -ü being the French -ü.
111. Hsüan. Shüan, the -ü being the French -ü and the -an as in man.
112. Hsüeh. Shüe, the -ü being the French -ü and the -e as in yes.
113. Hsün. Shüin, the -ü being the French -ü and the -i short as in pin.
114. Hu. Hoo as in hoot.
117. Huan. Hwan, with the -an as in can.
118. Huang. Hwahng.
119. Hui. Hway, the -way as in sway.
120. Hun. 'Hun, the -un being like the -on in motion.
121. Hung. Hung, the -un being like the -on in motion.
122. Huo. Hwo, the -wo being like the -wo in wonder, or the whole like -hoa in hoary.
123. I. Ee as in weed.
124. Jan. Ran, the J being practically the English R.
125. Jang. Rahng, the J being practically the English R.
126. Jao. Row, the J being practically the English R and -ow as in how.
128. Jên. Run as in English.
129. Jêng. Rung as in English.
130. Jih. Rrrr, the -rr being like the -hir in chiropodist, with the lightest possible emphasis on the -r.
131. Jo. Ro as in roster, robin, etc.
132. Jou. Roe as in English.
133. Ju. Rue as in English.
134. Juan. Ruan, the -u being neither short nor long and the -an short as in man.
135. Jui. Ruay, the -u being neither short nor long and the -ay as in hay.
136. Jun. Run, but with the -un sounding like the -on in motion.
137. Jung. Rung, but with the -un sounding like the -on in motion.
140. Kai. Gi as the first syllable of gynecology.
141. K’ai. Ki as in kind.
143. K’an. Kan as the English can.
144. Kang. Gahng, the -g being hard as in garden and the -ah as the long -a in father.
146. Kao. Gow, the -g being hard as in garden and the -ow as in cow.
147. K’ao. Cow as in English.
149. Kên. Gun as in English.
150. K’ên. Kun sounded as the first syllable in country.
151. Kêng. Gung, the gun being as in English.
152. K’êng. Kung, the -un as in English gun.
153. Ko. Go as in gore, with -o modified by -r.
154. K’o. Ko as in cord, with the -o modified by the -r.
155. Kou. Go as in English.
156. K’ou. As coa in coat.
157. Ku. Goo, the -g being hard as in gum and the -oo as in moon.
158. K’u. Coo as in English.
159. Kua. Gwah, the -g being hard as in gun and the -ah long as in father.
161. Kuai. Gwi, the -g being hard as in guy and the -i as in wine.
162. K’uai. Kwi, the -i being long as in wine, the whole as -qui in quite.
163. Kuan. Gwan, the -g being hard as in gun and -an as in man.
164. K’uan. Kwan, the -an as in man.
165. Kuang. Gwahng, the -g being hard as in gun and the -ah like long -a in father.
166. K’uang. Kwahng, the -ah like long -a in father.
168. K’uei. Kway, as the -qua in equator.
169. Kun. Gun, -g being hard and -un as the -on in motion.
170. K’un. Kun, the -un as the -on in motion.
171. Kung. Gung, the -g being hard and the -un as -on in motion.
172. K’ung. Kung, the -un as the -on in motion.
173. Kuo. Gwo, hard -g and the -wo like the carter’s whoa!
175. La. As la in pentatonic scale.
176. Lai. Lie as in English.
177. Lan. As in languor.
179. Lao. Low, the -ow as in cow.
180. Lê. Lo as in gallon.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Written form.</th>
<th>Approximate sound in English spelling.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>181.</td>
<td>Lei.</td>
<td>Lay as in English.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>182.</td>
<td>Lêng.</td>
<td>Lung as in English.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>183.</td>
<td>Li.</td>
<td>Lee as in leeward.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>184.</td>
<td>Lia.</td>
<td>Liah, the -i short as in gin, the -ah long as in yard.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>186.</td>
<td>Liao.</td>
<td>Liow, the -i short and the -ow as in cow.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>187.</td>
<td>Lieh.</td>
<td>Lieh, the -i short and the -eh as the -u in butt.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>188.</td>
<td>Lien.</td>
<td>Lien, the -i short as in bin and the -en as in hen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>189.</td>
<td>Lin.</td>
<td>As in linen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>190.</td>
<td>Ling.</td>
<td>As in filling.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>191.</td>
<td>Liu.</td>
<td>Lioo, the -i being short as in bin and the -oo as in ooze.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>192.</td>
<td>Lo.</td>
<td>Like the -lo in lord.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>193.</td>
<td>Lou.</td>
<td>Low as in below.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>194.</td>
<td>Lu.</td>
<td>Like the -loo in balloon.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>195.</td>
<td>Luan.</td>
<td>Lu-an, the -lu as the -loo in look and -an as in man.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>196.</td>
<td>Lun.</td>
<td>The -un as the -on in motion.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>197.</td>
<td>Lung.</td>
<td>The -un as the -on in motion.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201.</td>
<td>Ma.</td>
<td>As in English. Ma, nearly mar.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>203.</td>
<td>Man.</td>
<td>As in English.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>205.</td>
<td>Mao.</td>
<td>Mow, the -ow as in how.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>206.</td>
<td>Mei.</td>
<td>As in English may.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>207.</td>
<td>Mén.</td>
<td>As Mon in Monday.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>208.</td>
<td>Mêng.</td>
<td>The -en as -on in Monday.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>209.</td>
<td>Mi.</td>
<td>As English me.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>210.</td>
<td>Miao.</td>
<td>Miow, the -i being short as in bin and the -ow as in cow.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
211. Mieh. Mieh, the -i being short as in bin and the -eh as -u in butt.
212. Mien. Mi-en, the -i being short as in bin and the -en as in hen.
213. Min. As in English mint.
214. Ming. As in English looming.
215. Miu. As in English mew.
216. Mo. More.
218. Mu. Moo as cows do.
219. Na. As in English nasty.
221. Nan. As in English Nancy.
223. Nao. Now, meaning at present.
225. Nen. Nun, as in English.
226. Neng. Nung, the -ung as in lung.
228. Niang. Ni-ahng, the -i being short as in bin and the -ah long as in father.
230. Nieh. Ni-eh, the -i short and the -eh as the -u in butt. An alternative would be the -ia in brilliant.
232. Nin. As in nincompoop.
237. Nou. No as in English.
238. Nu. Noo as in noon.
239. Nuan. Nüan, the -ü as in French and the -an as in man.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Written form.</th>
<th>Approximate sound in English spelling.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>240.</td>
<td>Nung. Nung, the -un as -on in motion.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>242.</td>
<td>O or Ngo. Oar as in English, or Ngoar.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>243.</td>
<td>Ou or Ngou. Owe as in English, or Ngowe.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>244.</td>
<td>Pa. Bah! as in English.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>245.</td>
<td>P'a. Pa as in English.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>249.</td>
<td>P'an. Pan as in English.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>250.</td>
<td>Pang. Bahng, the -ah being as the long -a in father.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>251.</td>
<td>P'ang. Pahng, the -ah being as the long -a in father.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>252.</td>
<td>Pao. Bow, the -ow as in how.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>253.</td>
<td>P'ao. Pow as in powder.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>254.</td>
<td>Pei. Bay as in English.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>255.</td>
<td>P'ei. Pay as in English.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>257.</td>
<td>P'ên. Pun as in pundit.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>258.</td>
<td>P'eng. Bung as in English.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>259.</td>
<td>P'äng. Pung, the -ung as in the last.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>261.</td>
<td>P'i. Pea.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>262.</td>
<td>Piao. Bi-ow, the -i being short as in bin and -ow as in how.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>263.</td>
<td>P'iao. Pi-ow, the -i being short as in pin and -ow as in how.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>264.</td>
<td>Piek. Bi-eh, the -ieh being like the -ia in brilliant.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>265.</td>
<td>P'ieh. Pi-eh, the -ieh being like the -ia in brilliant.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>266.</td>
<td>Pien. Bi-en, the -ien being like -ien in Oriental.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>267.</td>
<td>P'ien. Pi-en, the -ien being like -ien in Oriental.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>268.</td>
<td>Pin. Bin as in English.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>269.</td>
<td>P'in. Pin as in English.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>270.</td>
<td>Ping. Bing as in scrubbing.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>271.</td>
<td>P'ing. Ping as in shopping.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
GUIDE TO PRONUNCIATION

No. Written form. Approximate sound in English spelling.
273. P’o. Por as in port but the -r only lightly sounded.
274. Pou. Bow, rhyming with show.
276. Pu. Bu as in bush, or Boo as in boot.
277. P’u. Poo as in pool.
278. Sa. Sah, sounded as in sartorial, with light -r sound.
279. Sai. Sigh as in sight.
280. San. San as in sanatorium.
281. Sang. Sahng, the -ah long as the -a in father.
282. Sao. Sow, rhyming with now.
283. Sê. Su as in sun.
284. Sên. Sun as in English.
285. Sêng. Sung as in English.
287. Shai. Shy as in English.
288. Shan. Shan as in shanty.
289. Shang. Shahng, the -ah like long -a in father.
290. Shao. Shou as in shout, rhyming with shout.
291. Shê. Like shir in shirt.
292. Shên. Shun as in English.
293. Shêng. Shung, the -un as in the last.
294. Shih. Shih, almost like the chi- in chivalry, but with the -i carrying a slight -r sound after it.
295. Shou. Show as in English.
296. Shu. Shoe as in English.
297. Shua. Shwah.
298. Shuai. Shwy, the -wy as in why.
299. Shuan. Shwan, the -an as in man.
300. Shuang. Shwahng.
301. Shui. Shway.
302. Shun. Sh-un, the -un as the -on in motion.
303. Shuo. Shwo, the -wo as in won.
304. So. Soa as in soar.
305. Sou. Sow, rhyming with mow.
No. Written form. Approximate sound in English spelling.

306. Ssu. The sound when men are hissing, Ssss . . . ssss . . . followed by the -u lightly sounded. If you say bus as in omnibus, carry on the final -s with the sound of the preceding -u to follow; you will get somewhere near the correct pronunciation.

307. Su. Soo as in soothing.
308. Suan. Swan as in swank.
310. Sun. S followed by -un with the sound of -on in motion.
311. Sung. S followed by -un as -on in motion and -g.
312. Ta. Dah as in dart, but with -r very lightly sounded.
313. T’a. Ta as the child says thank vou.
314. Tai. Dye as in English.
315. T’ai. Tie as in English.
316. Tan. Dan as in Daniel.
317. T’an. Tan as in English.
320. Tao. Dow, rhyming with now as in down.
321. T’ao. Tow, rhyming with now as in town.
322. Tê. Der, almost as the -der in yonder, but with -r scarcely sounded.
323. T’ê. Ter, almost as the -ter in daughter, but with -r scarcely sounded.
324. Tei. Day.
325. T’ei. Tay, the river of that name.
326. Têng. Dung as in English.
327. T’êng. Tung as in tungsten.
328. Ti. Dee, the river of that name.
329. T’i. Tea as in English.
330. Tiao. Di-ow, short -i as in bin, with -ow as in how.
331. T’iao. Ti-ow, short -i as in bin, with -ow as in how.
332. Tieh. Di-eh, the -ieh being like the -ia in brilliant.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Written form.</th>
<th>Approximate sound in English spelling</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>333</td>
<td>T’ieh.</td>
<td>Ti-eh, the -ieh being like the -ia in brilliant.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>334</td>
<td>Tien.</td>
<td>Di-en, short -i as in bin, with -en as in hen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>335</td>
<td>T’ien.</td>
<td>Ti-en, short -i as in bin, with -en as in hen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>336</td>
<td>Ting.</td>
<td>Ding as in pudding.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>337</td>
<td>T’ing.</td>
<td>Ting as in putting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>338</td>
<td>To.</td>
<td>Doa, almost like the -dore in adore, with -r lightly stressed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>339</td>
<td>T’o.</td>
<td>Toa, almost like tore, but -r scarcely stressed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>340</td>
<td>Tou.</td>
<td>Doe as in English.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>341</td>
<td>T’ou.</td>
<td>Toe as in English.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>342</td>
<td>Ts’.a.</td>
<td>Dzah, nearly like Tsar of Russia.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>343</td>
<td>Ts’a.</td>
<td>Tsah.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>344</td>
<td>Ts’ai.</td>
<td>Dzigh, rhyming with sigh.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>345</td>
<td>Ts’ai.</td>
<td>Tsigh, rhyming with sigh.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>346</td>
<td>Tsan.</td>
<td>Dzan, the -an as in man.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>347</td>
<td>Ts’an.</td>
<td>Tsan, the -an as in man.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>348</td>
<td>Tsang.</td>
<td>Dzahng.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>349</td>
<td>Ts’ang.</td>
<td>Tsahng.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>350</td>
<td>Tsao.</td>
<td>Dzow, the -ow as in how.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>351</td>
<td>Ts’ao.</td>
<td>Tsow, the -ow as in how.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>352</td>
<td>Tsè.</td>
<td>Dzu, the -u sound as in sun.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>353</td>
<td>Ts’è.</td>
<td>Tsu, the -u sound as in sun.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>354</td>
<td>Tsei.</td>
<td>Dzay, rhyming with hay.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>355</td>
<td>Tsèn.</td>
<td>Dzun, rhyming with run.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>356</td>
<td>Ts’èn.</td>
<td>Tsun, rhyming with run.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>357</td>
<td>Tsèng.</td>
<td>Dzung, rhyming with bung.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>358</td>
<td>Ts’èng.</td>
<td>Tsung, rhyming with bung.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>359</td>
<td>Tso.</td>
<td>Dzoa, rhyming with boa.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>360</td>
<td>Ts’o.</td>
<td>Tsoa, rhyming with boa.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>361</td>
<td>Tsou.</td>
<td>Dzoe, rhyming with doe.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>362</td>
<td>Ts’ou.</td>
<td>Tsoe, rhyming with toe.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>363</td>
<td>Tsu.</td>
<td>Dzoo, rhyming with zoo.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>364</td>
<td>Ts’u.</td>
<td>Ts’oo, rhyming with too.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>365</td>
<td>Tsuan.</td>
<td>Dzwan, the -an as in man.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>366</td>
<td>Ts’uan.</td>
<td>Tswan, the -an as in man.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>367</td>
<td>Tsui.</td>
<td>Dzway.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
368. Ts’ui. Tsway.
369. Tsun. Dzun, the -un as the -on in motion.
370. Ts’un. Tsun, the -un as the -on in motion.
371. Tsung. Dzung, the -un as the -on in motion.
372. Ts’ung. Tsung, the -un as the -on in motion.
373. Tu. Do as in English.
374. T’u. Too as in English.
375. Tuan. Dwan, the -an as in man.
376. T’uan. Twan, the -an as in man.
379. Tun. Dun, but with the -un as the -on in motion.
380. T’un. Tun, but with the -un as the -on in motion.
381. Tung. Dung, but with the -un as the -on in motion.
382. T’ung. Tung, but with the -un as the -on in motion.
383. Tzu. Dzuuh, with teeth closed, lips open, tip of tongue pointing downwards and close against the lower front teeth.
384. Tz’u. Tsuh, with teeth closed, lips open, tip of tongue pointing downwards and close against the lower front teeth. Take guts, say the -ts and carry on some of the preceding -u.
385. Wa. Wah, the -ah as the -a in jar.
386. Wai. Wye as the river of that name.
387. Wan. Wan, the -an as in man.
390. Wén. Won as in English.
391. Wêng. Wung, to rhyme with lung as in English.
392. Wo. Whoa as the carter to his horse.
393. Wu. Woo as in English.
394. Ya. Yah, almost like -yar in yard, but with scarcely any -r sound.
395. Yai. Yigh, to rhyme with sigh.
397. Yao. Yow, to rhyme with cow.
398. Yeh. Ye as in yes.
399. Yen. Yen, the Japanese coin.
400. Yi. Yih, the -i short as in bin.
401. Yin. Yin.
402. Ying. Ying.
403. Yo. Yoa, to rhyme with boa.
404. Yu. You as in English.
405. Yung. Yung, with the -un as the -on in motion.
408. Yūeh. Yū-eh, the -ü being French and the -eh like -u in butt.
409. Yūn. Yūin, the -ü being French and the -i very short, almost unsounded.
SPELLING CHART OF CHINESE WORDS

The 409 different sounds, which are found in the Guide to Pronunciation, and which, within the limits of the Roman alphabet, represent all the sounds in the Chinese language as spoken to-day, are made up of sixty-two separate syllabic sounds, if we confine ourselves to what are usually termed Initials and Finals. Chinese has often been designated a monosyllabic language. That is true in the sense that all the separate characters, or words, in the language can be pronounced as one syllable. However, on close analysis, it is found that many of these so-called monosyllables can be more accurately regarded as di-syllables or even tri-syllables, allowing for a Medial between the Initial and Final sounds. Moreover, in the language as spoken to-day, very frequently two or even three separate characters are required to denote a single concept or term.

The student will find below a chart of the sixty-two sounds which, in various combinations, form the 409 different sounds of the language. These are divided primarily into two sections, called respectively Initials and Finals. There are twenty-four Initials and thirty-eight Finals. Of the Finals, however, eleven sounds are used independently to form separate words, although they also enter into combination with other sounds. These eleven sounds are listed in a separate Section III.

I. INITIALS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Written form.</th>
<th>English equivalent</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Ch. J as in jeep.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Ch' Ch as in cheap.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. F. F as in fan.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. H. H, the aspirate, as in hand.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5. **Hs.** Sh, a sound varying in different parts of China between a real -sh as in shell, and a pure -s as in sell, varying according to the extent to which the upper teeth are advanced beyond the lower when the sound is made.

6. **J.** R as in run, ran, etc., varying again between -r and -y.

7. **K.** G hard as in gay, gum, etc.

8. **K’.** K as in kerb, and many initial hard c’s like can, card.

9. **L.** L as in lane, long, etc.

10. **M.** M as in man, maze, etc.

11. **N.** N as in nap, near, nose, etc.

12. **P.** B as in bow, band, bin, etc.

13. **P’.** P as in pin, pool, pan, etc.

14. **S.** S as in sand, sum, sin, etc.

15. **Sh.** Sh as in shun, shot, etc., but also varying between this and -s, approximating especially to the latter when preceding -a, -ai, -an.

16. **Ss.** Ss, a hissing initial sound as in snake. To produce this sound say “bus” as in omnibus, then add the sound of the “-u” which precedes. Put “the b-us” in reverse!

17. **T.** D as in done, dab, etc.

18. **T’.** T as in time, tan, tin, etc.

19. **Ts.** Dz, the terminal sound of pods -ds, or the initial of Tsar.

20. **Ts’.** Ts, the terminal sound of pots -ts.

21. **Tz.** Z, the terminal sound of goods -ds, or as the -z in zebra. It is difficult to distinguish between 19 and 21. If possible make the sound in 19 a little lighter.

22. **Tz’.** Ts as you hear the terminal in blitz -tz.

23. **W.** W as in wand, win, won, etc.

24. **Y.** Y as in you, yellow, etc.
II. Finals

[Note.—Di-syllables with medial vowels -i, -ũ or -ū are eighteen in number. They are 35–40, 44–46, 50–54, 57 and 59–61.]

Written No. form.                    English equivalent.
25. A. Ah, the long "a" in father, rather, etc.
26. Ai. I as in wine, sigh, lime, etc.
27. An. An, shortly sounded as in man, can, tan, etc.
28. Ang. Ahng, with the "a" always long as in father, etc.
29. Ao. Ow as in owl, how, etc.
30. E. Er, like the -ea in earn, learn, etc., the -r scarcely being heard.
31. Ei. Ay as in way, pay, say, etc.
32. En. Un as in junk, hung, under, etc.
33. Eng. Ung as in bung, lung, sung, etc.
34. I. Ee as in peep, jeep, deep, etc.
35. Ia (medial -i). Ya, the -a being short as in Yankee, yam, etc.
36. Iai (medial -i). Yai, a short -i as in bin, followed by a long -i as in high. The sound is represented by the e-i- in b-e(h)-i(nd).
38. Iao (medial -i). Yao, short -i as in 36, followed by -ow as in 29.
39. Ieh (medial -i). Yeh, short -i, followed by the -u sound in butt, or like the -ie in experience.
40. Ien (medial -i). I-en like the -ien in experience, or short -i as in 36, followed by -en as in hen.
41. Ih. Irr as -ir in chiropodist or in giraffe.
42. In. In as in English, bin, gin, etc.
43. Ing. Ing as in English, telling, willing, etc.
44. Io (medial -i). Yo like the -io sound in prodigious.
45. Iu (medial -i). Yiu as in view or the initial -u in union.
46. Ung (medial -i). Yung, in which an initial short -i as in 36 is followed by -ung sounded like -ong in mongrel, or as the Lancastrian pronounces the -ung in hungry.

47. O. Either -oa as in oar, soar, etc., or as in whoa!, the carter's "halt" to his horse.

48. Ou. Oe as in toe, foe, etc.

49. U. Oo as in choose, noose, etc.

50. Ua (medial ŭ). Wa like the -ua in suave.

51. Uai (medial ŭ). Wi as in wine, wide, etc.

52. Uan (medial ŭ). Wan, with the -an short as in man, can, etc.


54. Ui (medial ŭ). Way, but approximating to the French oui (the difference between 31 and 54 lies here).

55. Un. Un as the Lancastrian pronounces the -un in hungry.

56. Ung. Ung as the Lancastrian pronounces the -ung in hungry.

57. Uo (medial ŭ). Wo as in woman, wooden, etc.

58. Ü. Ü as in French, as you would say "oo" with pursed lips, with the tip of the tongue close to the front teeth.


60. Ueh (medial ŭ). U-eh, the French -ü, followed by -u as in butt.


62. Erh. Er as in earnest, the -r with a burr, thus distinguishing between this and 30.
III. Finals Used Independently

Eleven of the Final sounds as found in Section II are also used as rather independent sounds. But when so used some of them, as indicated below, are preceded by either an -ng or a -w in certain districts of China. In others there is no such modification, but as the modification is very common it is well to note it.

The eleven sounds referred to are as follows:—

63. A or Nga, as 25.
64. Ai or Ngai, as 26.
65. An or Ngan, as 27.
66. Ang or Ngang, as 28.
67. Ao or Ngao, as 29.
68. E or Nge, as 30.
69. En or Ngen, as 32.
70. I, as 34.
71. O or Ngo or Wo, as 47.
72. Ou or Ngou, as 48.
73. Erh, as 62.
INTRODUCTION TO THE DIALOGUES

NOTES ON THE TONES

The tones in Chinese are inflections of the voice, and the particular inflection of the voice when pronouncing a word determines the meaning. To put the matter in another way, tones serve the purpose of distinguishing one word from another. It is therefore important that attention should be paid to them.

As indicated in Dialogue No. 30, five tones are recognised in what used to be called Mandarin, or the official language of China. This is being gradually supplanted by the National language, "kuo yü", but in pronouncing this National language, the five tones of the old Mandarin are still current. It is true that the tendency is for the "Ju shêng" (entering or fifth tone) to die out. But it is still in common use in many parts of China, particularly in the north-west, so it is just as well that the student should be prepared for it.

The names of the tones are—
1. Shang P'ing Shêng, or Upper even.
2. Hsia P'ing Shêng, or Lower even.
3. Shang Shêng, or Rising tone.
4. Ch'ü Shêng, or Departing tone.
5. Ju Shêng or Entering tone.

As commonly heard in the vicinity of Peking, the true home of the Mandarin language with its four tones (1–4), the first is a falling tone, uttered somewhat sharply; the second is a curt upper rising tone; the third is a long rising tone broken in the middle; while the fourth is what its designation more or less suggests, namely, a short finishing falling away intonation. The "Ju shêng", as the writer is familiar with it, is a very abrupt
intonation in which the vowel sounds are shortened and hardened. It is usual to show this by romanising the characters in this tone by a final "h". E.g., in Shansi the character “ch’u” 出 to go out, is spoken as a “Ju shêng” and pronounced “ch’ūh”. “Cho tzu” 棗子 table, normally in the first tone, is pronounced “Chūōh tzu” in the “Ju shêng”.

It is practically impossible to convey the actual sounds of these tones in writing, but try to find a Chinese to repeat the lessons with you, and observe the inflections of his voice as he pronounces the different words.

It should be noted that the tones alter in different combinations, and also that they vary considerably in different parts of China.

I have tried to indicate the character of the tones as pronounced in Peking and vicinity, with the addition of the “Ju shêng” as I am familiar with it in Shansi province.
THE DIALOGUES
DIALOGUE No. 1

A Friend Arrives

Host, H.  Visitor, V.  Servant, S.  Friend, F.

1. H. Men k'ou yu jên.  1. There is someone at the door.

The order of words in the sentence should be observed. You have heard of "'pidgin English'', which is the coolie's attempt to say "Business" English. This is English as spoken by some Chinese servants and coolies on the China coast, who cast English words into Chinese sentence order. E.g., if in this sentence we adopted a literal translation and kept the Chinese order of the words, we should get "Door mouth is (have) man". The word "yu" may mean "to have", or it may mean "There is, are".

2. S. Shui.  2. Who (is there)?

3. F. Wo.  3. It is I (expecting his voice to be recognised).

4. V. Shih shui.  4. Who is it?

Note the order again, lit. "Is who?"

5. H. Pu chih tao.  5. I don't know.

The first personal pronoun is often omitted before verbs. "Chih" to know; "tao" to arrive. But the composite verb means "to know". There are many verbs formed in this way, the second part indicating that the "goal" of the verbal action has been reached. There are parallels in colloquial English, e.g., "Getting there".

6. V. Wo chü, k'an i  6. I will go to see (who it is).

It is necessary to use the first personal pronoun here. If it were omitted, the "chü" would be an order to someone else to go.

K'an i k'an. Lit. "look one look". A very common idiom.

7. H. Pu yung. Wo  7. No need (for that). I chiao Lung Fu will tell Lung Fu chü (the servant) to go.

Pu yung, no need. Note the absence of a verb to indicate "there is". This is regarded as unnecessary. Chinese is something like the language we use in telegrams.
VOCABULARY OF DIALOGUE No. 1

第 Ti. Number, degree, used to introduce ordinal numbers.
一 I. One.
课 K’o. Task, exercise.
1. 门 Mên. Door, gate.
口 K’ou. Mouth, opening.
有人 Yu. There is, there are, has, have.
    Jên. Man.

2. 谁 Shui. Who, whom.
3. 我 Wo. I, me.

4. 是 Shih. Is, are, am, etc.

5. 不 Pu. No, not.
    知 Chih. To know.
    道 Tao. Way, truth.
    知道 Chih-tao. To know.

6. 去 Ch’ü. To go.
    看 K’an. To look, to look at.
    看一看 K’an i k’an. To look, see.

7. 用 Yung. Need, use.
    叫 Chiao. To call, cause, order.
8. **H. Lung Fu.**

9. **S. Ai.**

10. **H. Lai pa.**

   "Pa" is used to add emphasis to the verb, especially when giving a command. It has other uses which will be explained later. But you should not use "pa" when addressing your equals or superiors, unless you are on extremely familiar terms with them.

11. **S. Ai!**

12. **H. Mên k'ou yu jên.**

   There is someone at the door. Go and see who it is.

   The use of "Ni" you, in addressing servants, etc., is permissible. Care should be exercised in using it in speaking directly to others. Sometimes the word "Nin" is used to address superiors.

13. **S. Ai.**

14. **S. (to friend at door).**

   What is your name, sir?

   "Kuei" honourable, the commonest form of polite epithet in addressing others. There are equivalents of question marks in Chinese, but in sentences like this they are unnecessary. See sentence 15 for an example.

15. **F. Wo hsing Li. Wang**

   My name is Lee. Is Mr. Wang at home?

   I have said (see 5 above) that the first personal pronoun is often omitted. It is, however, more commonly used than, say, thirty years ago. There are at least three ways of replying to the question in sentence 14:

   Chien hsing Li. Humble name Li.
   Wo chien hsing Li. I humble name Li.
   Pu kan tang, wo chien hsing Li. I am unworthy, I humble name Li.

   "Pu kan tang." Lit. "not dare bear (such honorific address)" is a very common reply to any complimentary or polite remarks. "Ma" is one of the Chinese marks of interrogation.
8. 隆福 Lung-Fu. A name (for the servant in this case).

9. 咦 Ai.³ Exclamation.

10. 來 Lai.² to come.
    吧 Pa.⁴ Final particle.

14. 先生 Hsien.¹ Before, formerly, first.
    生 Shêng.¹ Born, to beget, life.
    先生 Hsien-shêng. Teacher, Mr., Mrs.
    贤 Kuei.⁴ Honourable, dear, costly.
    姓 Hsing.⁴ Surname, clan.

15. 李 Li.³ A surname. Plum.
    在 Tsai.⁴ At, in, on, present, living.
    家 Chia.¹ Home, house, family, class.
    嗎 Ma.¹ Interrogative.

17. F. Hao. 17. Good (thank you).

Here we might have used "pu kan tang" (see on 15 above), instead of "Hao" which means good. But "hao" may be used in expressing appreciation of favours offered.

18. S. (to host). Li Hsien 18. Mr. Lee has come.
shêng lai lo (la).

"Lo" is short for "liao", which denotes the completed action of the verb (perfect tense).

19. H. Ch’ing chin lai pa. 19. Ask him to come in.
20. H. (to friend). Ya, 20. Hello Mr. Lee, how (ah) Li Hsien are you?
shêng hao ya
(ah).

"Ah" or "ya" at the end of sentences has mainly euphonic value, i.e., it helps to round off the sentence smoothly.


"Tou" or "tu" both, all. Note that it follows nouns, or pronouns, to which it refers.

22. H. and V. Hao, hao. 22. Quite well. Please Ch’ing tso, take a seat.
Ch’ing tso.

The duplication of polite forms of speech is very common.

23. F. Hsieh hsieh. 23. Thank you, thank you.

ch’a.
16. 請進 進來  Ch’ing. 3 Invite, please, call, engage.  
Chin. 4 Enter, advance.  
Chin-lai. To enter.  
17. 好 Hao. 3 Good, well, complete.

18. 了 Liao. 3 Lo. 3 La. 3 To end, finish, sign of past tense.

20. 呀 Ya. 1 Particle, exclamation, initial or final.

21. 張 Chang. 1 A surname, also classifier of nouns.  
都 Tou, 1 tu. 1 Both, all, together.

22. 坐 Tso. 4 To sit, a seat.

23. 謝 Hsieh. 4 To thank, thanks.

24. 泡茶 泡茶  P’ao. 4 To brew, soak, bubble, infuse.  
Ch’a. 2 Tea.  
P’ao ch’a. To make tea (in the teapot).
(Lit. "a s y o u  
speak I come").

"Chiu" is a word of many uses. Here it implies sequence, with a suggestion of immediacy.

shêng ho ch'a.

27. F. Pu kan tang. 27. Thank you. (Lit.  
"unworthy").

28. H. (as friend rises to 28. (Can't you) stay a  
leave). Tsai tso  
i hui'rh.

Lit. Again sit awhile, "i hui erh" awhile. But in speech the hui and erh coalesce and are pronounced huierh.

29. F. Tui pu chu. Yu 29. Sorry! There is some-  
jên teng cho wo,  
tè hui ch'ü.  
I must return.

"Tui pu chu"—a common phrase signifying regret or apology.
"Cho" is the sign of the present participle, and denotes the continuing action of the verb. "Têng" wait; "têng cho" waiting. "Tè" must, or should, in the sense of ought.
"Hui" return, "ch'ü" go, another instance of the double verb, the second of which indicates completion of the action.

30. F. (as host rises to 30. Stay where you are.  
see him off). Pu  
sung, pu sung.  
(Lit. "don't escort me").

31. H. and V. Na'erh ti 31. Never heard of such a  
hua.  
thing! (Lit.  
"where does such talk come from?").

32. (All together.) Tsai 32. Good-bye, good-bye.  
chien, tsai chien.  
(Lit. "again see").
25. 說
話
說話
就
Shuo. To speak, say, narrate.
Hua. Words, language, speech.
Shuo-hua. To speak.
Chiu. Immediately, then, so, etc.

26. 喝
Ho. To drink.

27. 敢
當
不敢當
Kan. Dare, presume.
Tang. To bear, act as, ought.
Pu-kan-tang. I am unworthy, I dare not presume, etc.

28. 再
會
一會兒
Tsai. Again, repeat.
Hui. A time, a turn, able to, etc.
I-hui-1-h. Awhile, a little time.

29. 對
住
對不住
等
得
回
回去
Tui. To face, pair, opposite.
Chu. To dwell, to stop.
Tui-pu-chu. To offend, apologise, regrets.
Têng. To wait, a class.
Cho. Particle, sign of present, participle.
Tê. Must, ought, get.
Hui. To return, go back.
Hui-ch’ü. To return.

30. 送
Sung. To send, escort, accompany.

31. 那
的
Ti. Sign of possessive ’s.

32. 見
再見
Chien. To see, perceive.
Tsai-chien. Good-bye.
DIALOGUE No. 2

The Chinese Teacher Arrives

Lady, L. Teacher, T. Servant, S.

1. S. Wang Hsien sheng lai la.
2. L. Ch'ing t'a chin lai.
3. L. Wang Hsien sheng hao ya.
4. T. Hao. T'ai t'ai ch'ih kuo fan mei yu.
5. L. Ch'ih la. Hsien sheng ch'ih la ma.
6. T. Hai mei yu ch'ih (or) P'ien kuo la. (or) Yes I have (I am ashamed to say).
7. L. Ch'ing Hsien sheng (or) Hsien seat.
sheng ch'ing tso.

This illustrates the full form of common questions in the Past or Perfect tenses. 
"Ch'ih liao (kuo) mo yu". Lit. Eaten—not have (eaten)? The object "food" comes between the two halves of the question form.

Now you see that the interrogative sign "ma" is but a shortened form of "mo yu" or mei yu as used in sentence 4 (above).

Chinese avoids redundancy wherever possible. If the tense is otherwise indicated there is no need to add extra words to the verb to show the tense. Here the word "huan" pronounced "hai", yet, serves in that way. So it is unnecessary to use "la" or "liao" after "ch'ih".

Inquiries about food form the usual method of greeting, particularly in the earlier parts of the day.

The alternative in sentence 6. "p'ien kuo la" is the very polite form of reply, and means "I have deprived you of your share", or "I have acted in a selfish or improper manner".

Please (teacher) take a seat.
VOCABULARY OF DIALOGUE No. 2

二  Erh.² Two. Second.

2. 他  T'a.¹ He, she, it.

4. 太 太太  T'ai.⁴ Too, very, superlative, exalted.
       太太 T'ai-t'ai. Madame, Lady.
       喫 Ch'ih.¹ To eat, used of tobacco as well as food.
       過 Kuo.⁴ Sign of past tense, to pass over.
       飯 Fan.⁴ Rice, food.
       沒 Mei,² mu, mo.⁴ Negative, used with the verb "yu" to have.

6. 還 偏  Huan, hai.² Still, yet, precedes negative.
      P'ien.¹ Deflected, on the contrary, prejudiced.
8. T. Ch’ing T’ai t’ai hsien tso.
9. L. Hsien shêng t’ai k’o ch’i.
10. T. Pu k’o ch’i. Shih li tang ti.
   "Li" courtesy; "tang" ought; "ti" the possessive sign, used to turn verbal, adjectival or other phrases into composite noun clauses. Here, e.g., it makes this sense—"It is something that courtesy demands".
11. L. (to servant). K’o i make tea for the kei Hsien shêng teacher.
    p’ao ch’a (or) ch’i ch’a.
   The "k’o i" modulates the sense of command, and so is appreciated by servants. Use it frequently if you want to get good service.
12. S. Ya. (Ah) Yü pei hao la.
13. (L. to teacher). Ch’ing Hsien shêng ho (teacher).
15. L. Chung kuo hua, wo pu ta tung. I don’t understand Chinese very well.
   Note the order of words. "Chung kuo hua", lit. Middle Kingdom words, is placed first for the sake of emphasis. "Ta" is used to qualify the verb and has adverbial use, "greatly".
16. T. T’ai t’ai, chi shih tao pi kuo lai ti. When did you (Lady) arrive in our country?
   Note that "la" without "la" or "liao" indicates past tense, because that is obvious from the context.
9. 客気  K’o.⁴ Guest, traveller.
    Ch’i.⁴ Breath, air, vapour, flavour.

10. 理    Li.³ Right, principle, arrange, fitting.

11. 可以  K’o.⁴ May, might, can, be able.
    I.³ To take, by means of.
    可以 K’o-i. May, can, will do.
    給    Kei. Chi.³ Give, for, to, sign of dative.
    沦    Ch’i.³ Infuse, brew, alternative for “p’ao”.

12. 預備  Yü.⁴ Beforehand.
    Pei.⁴ Prepare, ready.
    預備    Yü-pei. To prepare, make ready.

15. 中國  Chung.¹ Middle.
    Kuo.² Country, kingdom.
    中國 Chung-kuo. China, the Middle Kingdom.
    大臘 Ta.⁴ Big, great, much
    懂    Tung.³ To understand.

16. 幾    Chi.³ Many, interrogative how much? how many?
    時    Shih.² Time, season.
    幾時    Chi-shih. When?
    到    Tao.⁴ Arrive, reach.
    敝    Pi.⁴ Humble, my (polite).
17. L. Wo shih shang yüeh ts'ai tao kuei kuo lai ti.

"Ts'ai" is a connecting word, here indicating the definite point of time, with a certain qualifying sense of "only, just then", etc.

18. T. T'ai t'ai ti Chung kuo hua, shuo tê hao.

18. But you (Lady) speak Chinese well (Lit. "Lady's China country words speak get well").

19. L. Kuo chiang, kuo chiang.

19. You flatter me (Lit. "over-praise").


20. It is the truth. (You speak) really well.

21. L. Chung kuo hua yung i hsüeh pu yung i hsüeh.

21. Is Chinese easy to learn?

22. T. Ping pu t'ai nan.

"Ping"—really—for emphasis.

22. Not too difficult.

23. L. Wo yüan i pa Chung kuo hua, hsüeh hao.

23. I should like to learn Chinese well.

24. T. Wo chin hsin ti chiao ni, chiu shih la.

Lit. "I exhaust heart teach give you".
"Chiu shih la"—a final rounding off phrase.
17. 上
Shang. The last in point of time, above, on, go up.
月
Yüeh. Month, moon.
才
Ts’ai. Just, thereupon, scarcely.

19. 獻
Chiang. Praise, commend.
過 獻
Kuo-chiang. Excessive praise, flattery.
20. 真
Chên. True, real.
實
Shih. Solid, sincere, true, real.
實 在
Shih-tsai. Truly, really.
21. 容 易
Yung. Easy, contain, face, looks.
易
I. Easy.
學
Hsüeh. Learn.
22. 並 難
Ping. Together, abreast, all.
難
Nan. Difficult.

23. 願
Yüan. Wish, willing.
意
I. Idea, wish, intention, meaning.
願 意
Yüan-i. Willing, wish, desire.
把
Pa. Take, take hold. Introduces object of verb.

24. 竭
Chin. Limit, exhaust, utmost.
心
Hsin. Heart, mind.
教
Chiao. Teach, instruct.
你
Ni. You.
DIALOGUE No. 3

Conversation with Teacher

Teacher, T.    Pupil, P.

1. P. Chê ko shih shih-mo.  1. What is this?
   Note the order of words, exactly the reverse of English. "This is what?"

2. T. Na shih i pên shu.  2. That is a book.
   "Pên" is a classifier of the noun "shu". There are many of these, such as pên, ko, kuan. "Ko", a piece, is the most common, and may be almost universally used. But if you want to speak Chinese well, you must learn to use the appropriate classifier with its noun. A list of the more common classifiers is given in Grammar Lesson, p. 427.

3. P. Shih shih-mo shu.  3. What (kind of) book is it?

4. T. Shih i pên tzu tien.  4. It is a dictionary.

5. P. Na ko tung hsi chiao shih mo.  5. What is that (thing) called?

6. T. Na shih i kuan ch'ien pi.  6. That is a pencil.

7. P. Wo mên k'o i tso shih-mo.  7. What shall we do?
   Note the use of "k'o i". Let us, we may, may we, shall we, etc., generally speaking of permissive significance.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>三</th>
<th>San.¹ Three.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>Chê.⁴ This.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>個</td>
<td>Ko.⁴ Piece, classifier of nouns.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>這個</td>
<td>Chê-ko. This.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>甚 什</td>
<td>Shen.² Shih.² What, very, any, the second form being more commonly used.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>麼</td>
<td>Mo.¹ Interrogative particle.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>Pên.³ Classifier of books, documents, root, source.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>書</td>
<td>Shu.¹ Book.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>4.</th>
<th>Tzu.⁴ Word, written word.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>字典</td>
<td>Tien.³ Constant, rule, record</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>Tung.¹ East.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>東西</td>
<td>Hsi.¹ West.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>東西</td>
<td>Tung-hsi. Thing, things.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>Kuan.³ Tube, classifier of tubular things.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>鉛</td>
<td>Ch'ien.¹ Lead (metal).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>筆</td>
<td>Pi.³ Pen, pencil, brush.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>鉛筆</td>
<td>Ch'ien-pi. Lead-pencil.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>們</td>
<td>Mên.² Sign of plural.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td>Wo-mên. We, us.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>我們</td>
<td>Tso.⁴ To do, to make, to act.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>作做</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
8. T. Wo mên k’o i nien shu. 8. Let us read.

9. P. Wo mên k’o i nien shih-mo shu. 9. What book shall we read?

10. T. Wo mên k’o i nien chê ko tu pên. 10. Let us read this Reader.

11. P. Ch’ing hsien shêng nien, wo t’ing. 11. Will you please read (teacher). I will listen.

12. T. Na ko fa tzu pu ta hao. 12. That is not a very good method.

The verb "shih", is, are, etc., is usually omitted in direct speech where no special emphasis is needed.

13. P. Na mo, hsien shêng hsien nien, wo chiu kên cho nien, hsing pu hsing.

13. Then will you (teacher) read first, and I will read after you. Will that do?

Na mo, a very common phrase in conversation, indicating connective logical sequence, as in English we say, "Then", "That being so", "In that case", etc.

"Nien" usually indicates reading aloud. "Tu" or "k’an", which also mean to read, are used of reading to oneself.

"Hsing pu hsing", a very common way of finishing up a sentence, seeking, or assuming the approval of the person addressed.


15. P. Yao shih wo nien ts’o la, ch’ing hsein shêng kao su wo. 15. You (teacher) will please tell me if I make mistakes in reading.

Your first introduction to the Conditional Mood. "Yao shih", if. The "la" is short for "Liao", which latter is not often heard in colloquial. Here it indicates the future-perfect tense, as the act of reading wrongly would have been completed before the teacher would be called upon to correct.
8. 唸 書  Nien.⁴ To read aloud. 
     Nien-shu. To study, read aloud.

10. 読  
    読本  Tu.² To read. 

11. 聽  
    聽  
    聽一聽  T'ing.¹ To listen. 
    T'ing-i-t'ing. To listen.

12. 法  子  
    Fa.² ³ ⁴ Method, way of doing things, law. 
    Tzu.³ Son, terminal of nouns, child.

13. 那  
    那  
    那麼  Na-mo. Then, seeing that it is so. 
    Kên.¹ To follow, accompany, the heel, with.
    行  Hsing.² To go, to do. 
    行不  
    行不行  Hsing-pu-hsing. Will that do? Is it possible?

14. 很  Hên.³ Extreme, very.

15. 要  
    錯  
    告訴  Yao.⁴ If, necessary, want. 
    Ts'ø.⁴ Mistake, error, wrong. 
    Kao.⁴ Inform, accuse. 
    Su.⁴ Inform, explain. 
    告訴  Kao-su. Tell, inform.
16. T. Li tang, li tang. 16. (Certainly), that is my bounden duty.

This is a shortened form in duplicate of sent. 10, dial. 2.

17. P. Hsien ts'ai nien wan 17. Now that we have
la shu, wo mên finished reading,
hai k'ô i tso what else shall we
shih-mo. do?

The character "huan" in colloquial is almost always read "hai", indicating something that is not yet done. As we should say in English, "What else shall we do?"

18. T. Wo mên k'ô i hsieh 18. We might write.
tzu.

hsieh tzu.

20. T. Hui hsieh tzu pu 20. Can you write?
hui.

"Hui" is "to know how to do a thing".

21. P. Pu hui, k'ô shih wo 21. No, but I am willing
yuân i hsüeh. to learn.

22. T. Na mo, wo chiu 22. Then I will do my best
chin hsin ti chiao to teach you.
ni.

23. P. Hsieh tzu, yung 23. What do we need for
shih mo tung hsi. writing?

24. T. Wo men yung i 24. We need a pen (brush),
kuan pi, i chang a sheet of paper, a
chih, i k'uai mo, piece of ink (Chinese)
ho i fang yen t'ai. and an ink slab.
Ts'ai chia shang Then we must also
i tie'r rh shui, yen have (lit. add) a little
mo. water to mix the
ink. (Lit. rub the ink.)
17. 现 Hsien.4 Now, at present.
現在 Hsien-tsai. At present, now. At this point.
完 Wan.2 To finish, complete, end.

18. 写 Hsieh.3 To write.

19. 喜 Hsi.3 Joy, pleased, glad.
喜歡 Huan.1 Rejoice, take pleasure.

21. 可 K’o.3 But.

24. 紙 Chih.3 Paper.
塊 K’uai.4 Piece.
墨 Mo. Mei.4 Ink.
和 Ho.2 4 With, together, harmony.
方 Fang.1 Square, classifier of pieces of Chinese ink.
硯 Yen.4 Ink-slab.
台 T’ai.2 Slab.
硯台 Yen-t’ai. Slab for mixing Chinese ink.
加 Chia.1 To add.
25. P. Wo pa chê hsieh tung hsi na lai. Wo mên chiu hsieh tzu.
25. I will get these things, and we will (begin to) write.
26. Good, we will (begin to) write.
24. 點 Tien. A little, point, dot.
    一點兒 I tie’rh. A little.
水 Shui. Water.
研 Yen. To grind, as ink on the slab. To inquire.
25. 把 Pa. To take, handle, grasp.
    些 Hsieh. A few, some, sign of plural, with adjectives.
拿 Na. To take.
拿來 Na-lai. To bring.
DIALOGUE No. 4

Between two friends A and B who are learning Chinese together. This dialogue provides some basic rules of grammar in the form of useful sentences. Learn this lesson thoroughly, and you will be well repaid.

1. A. Chê ko tung-hsi 1. What is this called?
   chiao shih-mo.
   Note again the order of the words. "This thing called what?"
2. B. Na shih i ko ch'a 2. That is a teacup.
   pei (wan).
   It is not necessary to use "ko" after "na" if "ko" comes later in the sentence in reference to the same thing.
3. A. Ch'a pei ho ch'a 3. What is the difference
   wan yu shih-mo
   fèn pieh.
   Notice carefully the framework of this sentence, "Cup with bowl
   have what difference?"
4. B. Ch'a pei yu pa'rh, 4. A ch'a pei has a handle
   ch'a wan mu yu
   pa'rh.
5. A. Na shih shih-mo 5. What is that?
   tung hsi.
6. B. Na shih i ko (pa) 6. That is a teapot.
   ch'a hu.
   "Pa" is the correct classifier of teapots, but "ko" is also used.
7. A. Ch'a hu ho shui hu, 7. Is a ch'a hu the same
   i yang pu i yang.
   as a shui hu?
   Lit. "Teapot with (compared with) kettle one kind not one kind?"
8. B. Pu i yang. Ch'a hu 8. No. A teapot is used
   shih p'ao ch'a
   for making tea and
   yung ti, shui hu
   a kettle for boiling
   shih shao shui
   water.
   yung ti.

Note "ti" after "yung" making an adjectival phrase. "A tea-
   pot is making tea's use". So "used for".
四  Ssu.\(^4\)  Four.

2. 盃 舉  Ped.\(^1\)  Cup, with or without handle, glass.
    碗  Wan.\(^3\)  Cup, bowl, usually without handle.

3. 分  Fên.\(^1\)  (1) Verbal form, to divide.  (4) Part, tenth.
    別  Pieh.\(^2\)  To distinguish, also "do not ".
    分別  Fên-pich.  Difference.

4. 把  Pa.\(^4\)  Handle, classifier of teapots, etc., also
    introduces object of verbs.

6.  壺  Hu.\(^2\)  Kettle, pot.
    茶壺  Ch’a-hu.  Teapot.

    樣  Yang.\(^4\)  Pattern, way, manner.
    一樣  I-yang.  The same, similar.

8. 燒  Shao.\(^1\)  To burn, bake (to boil).
9. A. Chê hsieh yen 9. Whose are these cigarette
chüan’rh shih ettes?
shui ti.

Chê-hsieh, these. Na-hsieh, those. "Hsieh" is the sign of the
plural with distinguishing or demonstrative adjectives.
Note order of words. "These cigarettes are whose?"

10. B. Na hsieh yen chüan’ 10. Those cigarettes are
rh shih wo ti.
mine!

11. A. Yu yang huo (huo 11. Have you any matches?
ch’ai) mei yu.
Yu mo (mei) yu. Have you? (anything).

12. B. Yu, ni yao pu yao. 12. Yes, do you want some?
Yao pu yao. Do you want (anything). Note the use of "mo" and
"pu" as negatives in questions of a direct character. Always
use "mo" with "yu". "Pu" is used only in the present and
future tenses. In the past tense you say "T’a yao la mu yu".
Did he want?

ch’ih (ch’ou) yen.
14. B. Chê liang kuan pi 14. Are these two pens
shih ni ti ma.
yours?
"Liang" in sense of "two" is used when qualifying a noun.
In complex multiple numbers and in ordinals you use "èrh".

15. A. Chê i kuan kang pi 15. This steel pen is mine.
shih wo ti.
16. B. Na i kuan ni. 16. And what about that
one?

17. A. Na i kuan mao pi, 17. That Chinese brush is
shih pu shih ni ti yours, isn’t it?
ya.

Note the difference in tone of the two "na". In questions it is
third, and in statements fourth, tone.
9. 燃燬
Chê-hsieh. These.
Yen.¹ Tobacco, snuff, smoke, opium.
Chüan.³ A roll, to roll up.
煙捲兒 Yen-chüan-rh. Cigarettes ("rh" being short for "ërh").
誰的 Shui-ti. Whose?
10. 那些 Na-hsieh. Those.
我的 Wo-ti. My, mine.
11. 洋 Yang.² Foreign, the sea, over the sea, vast.
火 Huo.² Fire.
柴 Ch’ai.² Firewood, fuel.
火柴 Huo-ch’ai. Matches.
13. 喫煙 Chi’ih-yen. To smoke (lit. to eat smoke).
抽 Ch’ou.¹ To draw, pull out.
抽煙 Ch’ou-yen. To smoke, as tobacco.
14. 兩 Liang.³ Two, preceding nouns.
15. 鋼 Kang.¹ Steel.
鋼筆 Kang-pi. Steel pen.
16. 那一管 Na-i-kuan. Which one? Note that the tone is 3 for na.
呢 Ni.¹ Mark of interrogation, and final enclitic.
17. 毛 Mao.² Hair.
毛筆 Mao-pi. The hair-brush, Chinese pen.
你的 Ni-ti. Your, yours.
18. B. Pu shih wo ti. Shih wo p'êng yu ti. 18. No, it is not mine. It belongs to my friend.

There is no need to use "ti" the possessive after "wo" in the second half of this sentence. It would be too clumsy to say "Shih wo ti p'êng yu ti". Where the sense is clear, Chinese prefer to avoid repetition of these small words.

19. A. Na i p'ing mo shui, yeh shih t'a ti ma. 19. Is that bottle of ink his too?
20. B. Pu shih t'a ti, shih hsien shêng ti. 20. No, it belongs to the teacher.
21. A. Chê hsiieh yen chüan'rh hao pu hao. 21. Are these good cigarettes?
22. B. Pu ta hao. 22. Not very good.
23. A. Ni tsai na'rh mai ti. 23. Where did you buy them?

Notice carefully the two words spelled the same "mai", but meaning respectively "buy" and "sell". In the Chinese character (see Chinese exercises at end of book) these two words are written differently. But the tones for "buy" and "sell" are different. For "buy" use the third tone, and for "sell" the fourth.

25. A. Tsai chê li yu mai ti mei yu. 25. Are there any on sale here?
27. A. Tsai na li yu mai ti ni. 27. Where are there any on sale?

28. B. Shang ta chieh shang ch'ü, huo che k'o i mai. 28. If you go on to the main street, you may be able to buy some.
18. 朋友
     P’êng.² Companion, friend, mate.
     Yu.³ Intimate acquaintance, friend.
     P’êng-yu. Friend, mate.

19. 瓶
     P’ing.² Bottle.
     Yeh.³ Also.

23. 那兒
     Na³ ’rh. Where?
     Mai.³ To buy.

24. 市場
     Shih.⁴ The market.
     Ch’ang.² An open place, square.
     Shih-ch’ang. The public market.

25. 裏
     Li.³ In, inside, within.
     Chê-li. Here.
     Mai.⁴ To sell. (Notice the tone is 4; cf. with mai 3, to buy.)

27. 那裡

28. 街
     Chieh.² Street.
     Huo.⁴ Perhaps, if, someone.
     Che.³ Particle, to form adverbs, abstract nouns, etc.
29. A. Tsa men lia, k’o i 29. Let us two go on the
shang chieh ch’ü, street to buy a few.
mai chi ko pa.

Tsa-men-is a friendly familiar form for “wo-men”, “we”. Tsa-men- lia
is a shortened form for “Tsa-men-liang-Ko”.

30. B. Hao. Tsa mën i 30. Right, let us go to-
k’uai’érh ch’ü. gether.

I-k’uai-érh. Lit. one piece, so together.
29. 咱 Tsa.² We (familiar).
    倆 Lia.³ Two.
    咱們倆 Tsa-mên-lia. We two.
30. 一塊兒 I-k’uai-èrh. Together (all one piece).
DIALOGUE No. 5

Between two friends A and B, comprising a series of short sentences, to be fired at one another in quick rotation, and illustrating grammatical rules of a basic character.

1. A. T’a lai la mei yu.
2. B. T’a mei yu lai.
3. A. Ni lai pu lai.
4. B. Wo lai.

5. A. Tso t’ien t’a mên lai la ma.
6. B. T’a men lai la.
7. A. Ming t’ien ni mên lai pu lai.
8. B. Ming t’ien wo mên pu lai.
10. B. Wo ch’ü.
11. A. Ming t’ien ni hui lai pu hui lai.
12. B. Ming t’ien pu hui lai.
13. A. Ming t’ien t’a (f) hui ch’ü pu hui ch’ü.

14. B. Shih ti, ming t’ien t’a hui ch’ü.
1. Has he come?
2. No he has not.
3. Are you coming?
4. Yes, I am coming (in reference to the place where they are standing).
5. Did they come yesterday?
6. Yes, they did.
7. Are you coming tomorrow?
8. No, we are not coming tomorrow.
9. Are you going to-day?
10. Yes, I am going.
11. Are you coming back tomorrow?
12. No, I shall not come back tomorrow.
13. Will she go back tomorrow?
14. Yes, she will go back tomorrow.

Note that expressions of time usually precede everything else in simple direct questions and answers.
VOCABULARY OF DIALOGUE No. 5

五  Wu.³ Five.

5. 昨天  Tso.³ Yesterday.
      T’ien.¹ Day, Heaven.
      Tso-t’ien. Yesterday.
7. 明天  Ming.² The dawn, also bright, clear, open.
      Ming-t’ien. To-morrow.

9. 今天  Chin.¹ Now, the present.
      Chin-t’ien. To-day.
11. 回來  Hui-lai. To return (here).
13. 她  T’a.¹ She. Note feminine form of character.

15. A. Ni shang na li ch’ü.  15. Where are you going?
   Note that the verb ch’ü comes last in these sentences. That is
   because it is part of the composite verb shang-ch’ü. Sometimes this
   verb is put first, e.g., 18. "Ni ch’ü kan shen-mo".

16. B. Wo shang chieh ch’ü.  16. I am going on the
   street.
17. A. Wo yeh ch’ü.  17. I am going too.
18. B. Ni ch’ü kan shih mo.  18. What are you going
   for?
19. A. Wo ch’ü mai tung hsi.  19. I am going to buy some
   things.
20. B. Mai shih mo tung hsi.  20. What are you going to
   buy?
21. A. Mai i ting mao tzu, ho i shuang hsieh.  21. A hat and a pair of
   shoes.
   Note "ting", the classifier of "mao-tzu".

22. B. Tao kuo Pei-ching mei yu.  22. Have you ever been to
   Peking?
   Pei-ching (Northern Capital), styled Pei-p’ing (Northern Peace)
   since the old Pei-ching was captured by Chiang K’ai Shek in 1926,
   when Nanking (Southern Capital) became the new capital of all
   China.

23. A. Mei yu tao kuo.  23. No, I have never been.
24. B. Ch’i lai, wo men tsou pa.  24. Get up, let us go.
   Tsou is simply to go, without any goal being indicated. If you
   use "ch’ü", some idea of a goal is implied.

25. A. Tèng i tèng, tè na chi ko ch’ien.  25. Wait a bit, I must get
   some money.
26. B. Na pu yao chin, wo tai tè yu ch’ien.  26. That doesn’t matter, I
   have some money on me.

   The "tè" in "tai tè", followed by "yu", which some would
   consider redundant, is really equivalent to "la", the past tense.
18. 幹  Kan.⁴  To do, manage, ability.

21. 頂  Ting.³  The classifier of hats, caps, etc., top, button.
       帽  Mao.⁴  Hat, cap.
       鞋  Shuang.¹  A couple, both, pair.
       Hsieh.²  Shoe.
       一雙鞋  I-shuang-hsieh.  A pair of shoes.

22. 北  Pei.³⁴  North.
       北京  Ching.¹  Capital city.
       北京  Pei-ching.  Old name for Peking, now called Peiping.

24. 起  Ch'i.³  To get up, rise, mount.
       起來  Ch'i-lai.  To get up, rise.
       走  Tsou.³  To walk, to go (without reference to a specific goal).

25. 等  Têng-i-têng.  To wait a bit.
       錢  Ch'ien.²  Money.

26. 緊  Chin.³  Tight, pressing.
       要緊  Yao chin.  Important (lit. want urgent).
       帶  Tai.⁴  To carry on the person.
27. A. K’o shih chieh jen 27. But borrowing other ti ch’ien pu ta people’s money is not hao. a very good (habit).

“Chieh” means both to borrow and to lend, and there is no difference in tone to help in differentiating the two meanings. You have to look to the context to discover the difference. As a help, sometimes “chieh-lai” is used for “to borrow”, and “chieh-chù” for “to lend”. “Chieh-kei” is also used in the latter sense.


“Yao”, must, need to.

“K’an” is used in the sense of “depends on”, as well as of “look at”.

29. A. Yu ti shih hou hao, 29. Sometimes it is all right, yu ti shih hou pu sometimes not, isn’t hao, shih pu shih. it?

“Yu ti shih hou”, sometimes. Lit. “There are times”.

30. B. Tui la. 30. Right.

Note how “tui” means “right” as well as agreeing, etc.
27. 借 Chieh.\(^4\) To borrow anything, also means to lend!

28. 看 K’an.\(^4\) To look at, regard, depends (in the sense as translated).

情 Ch’ing.\(^2\) Facts, affairs, feelings, nature.
形 Hsing.\(^4\) Form, appearance.
情形 Ch’ing-hsing. Circumstances.
怎 Tsên.\(^3\) How? In what way?
怎樣 Tsên-yang. How? In what way, manner, etc.

29. 時 Shih.\(^2\) Time, season.
候 Hou.\(^4\) A time or period, to wait, expect.
時候 Shih-hou. Time, season, time of day.

30. 對 Tui.\(^4\) Right, to agree with.
DIALOGUE No. 6

Mistress and Servants discuss domestic matters.

Mistress, M.  Servant(s), S.

1. S. T’ai t’ai chiao wo pa.  1. Did you (Lady) call me?

2. M. Shih ti. Chiao ch’u tzu ho k’an mên ti (mên fang) lai, wo yao ho ni mên shuo chi chü hua.  2. Yes, call the cook and gate-man. I want to say something to you (lit. say a few sentences to you).

3. S. T’a mên chiu lai. Ai, lai la.  3. They will be along shortly. Ah, here they come!

4. M. Tso hsia pa.  4. Sit down!

5. S. (In a body.) Pu yung tso. Wo mên chan cho ti hao.  5. No need for us to sit. It is more fitting that we stand.

Servants naturally expect to stand in the presence of their mistress.

6. M. Chin t’ien wo hên mang, yao ta chia pang mang. "Ta-ehia", a frequently used expression for "All of you".


8. M. Hsien pa ch’ih fan ti chia chü na lai, wo yao k’an i k’an.  8. First bring the cutlery and crockery (lit. the eating utensils) and let me see them.
VOCABULARY OF DIALOGUE No. 6

六  Liú.⁴ Six.

2. 厨房  Ch’ú.² Kitchen, cook.
       Fang.² Room, house, with preceding means, kitchen, or cook.
句  Chū.⁴ Sentence, phrase.

4. 下  Hsia.⁴ Down, beneath, below.
5. 站  Chan.⁴ To stand, station, post, etc.

6. 忙  Mang.² Busy.
       Chia.¹ Home, family.
       Ta-chia. All, everybody.
       Pang.¹ Help, assist.

8. 傢具  Chia.¹ Utensils.
       Chū.⁴ Utensils.
9. S. T'ai t'ai shih chiao wo men pa tao tzu, ch'a tzu, t'iao shih ho shao tzu, tou yao na lai ma.

Do you want us to bring the knives, forks, spoons and ladles, the whole lot?

Notice the position of "tou", meaning all. It follows the enumeration of the things which form the compound subject, gathering them all up as it were.

10. M. Shih ti, yeh yao na ch'a pei, wan, tieh tzu ho p'an tzu.

Yes, I also want you to bring the tea-cups, bowls, saucers and plates.

The "ho", meaning "and", usually precedes the last of a number of items enumerated together.

11. S. Chê hsieh tunghsi na lai la, chiao wo men fang tsai na li ni.

When we have brought them, where do you want us to put them?

12. M. Pa t'a men tou fang tsai cho tzu shang.

Put them all on the table.

"T'a-men", here applied to inanimate things.

13. S. T'ai t'ai chin t'ien wan shang, pu shih ch'ing k'o ma.

Aren't you inviting some gueststo-night?

14. M. Pu shih wan shang ch'ing k'o, shih chin t'ien hsia wu ch'ing chi ko jên lai ho ch'a.

No, not this evening. I am asking a few folk to tea this after-noon.

15. S. Na mo, t'ai t'ai tê chiao ch'u fang to k'ao mien pao ho tien hsin.

Then you should tell the kitchen (cook) to bake a lot of bread and cakes.

Note the position of "to", meaning more. It precedes the verb.
9 刀叉 調匙 勺
Tao.¹ Knife, blade.
Ch’a.¹ Fork.
T’iao.² To stir, mix.
Shih.² Ch’ih.² Spoon, key.
Shao² (tzu). Scoop, ladle.

10. 碟盤
Tieh² (tzu). Plate, saucer.
P’an² (tzu). Plate, dish.

11. 放
Fang.⁴ Put, place.

12. 桌
Cho¹ (tzu). Table.

13. 晚
Wan.³ Evening, late.

14. 午 下午
Wu.³ Noon.
Hsia-wu. Afternoon.

15. 多烤麵包
To.¹ Much, many, how (in figures).
K’ao.² To bake, roast.
Mien.⁴ Flour, bread.
Pao.¹ Parcel, wrap, with the preceding, a loaf, bread.
16. M. Huang yu ho kuo tzu chiaiang, to pu to.

16. Is there a fair quantity of butter and jam (in the house)?

17. S. Chê hsieh, tou kou shih lai ko k'o jen ch'ih.

"Lai", come, is used in multiples of ten, to indicate roughly that number.

17. There is enough of these for about ten guests.

18. M. Chia chü, yeh kou shih lai ko jên yung ma.

18. Are the table utensils (crockery, cutlery, etc.), sufficient for about ten people?

19. S. Pu ta kou. Yao shih tao tzu, ch'a tzu pu kou ti shih hou, k'o i yü pei k'uai tzu, chiao t'a mên shih.

19. Not quite enough. (But) if the knives and forks are insufficient, we might have chopsticks ready for them to use.

20. M. Chih p'a yu ti jên pu hui shih k'uai tzu.

20. My fear is that some of them will not be able to use chopsticks.

"Chih p'a". Only fear, A mental reservation.

21. S. Na tao mei yu fa 21. Then there is nothing tzu la.

21. Then there is nothing we can do.
15. 點 Tien.³ A dot, mark out, with the next, cakes, pastry.
心 Hsin.¹ Heart, with the preceding, cakes, pastry.

16. 黃 Huang.² Yellow, with the next, butter.
油 Yu.² Oil, with preceding, butter.
果 Kuo³ (tzu). Fruit, consequences, etc., with the next, jam, preserve.
醬 Chiang.¹ Thick, paste, etc., with preceding, jam, preserve.

17. 夠 Kou.⁴ Enough, sufficient.
十 Shih.² Ten.
十來個 Shih-lai-ko. About ten.

使 Shih.³ To employ, use.

20. 只 Chih.³ Only.
怕 P’a.⁴ To fear.

21. 倒 Tao.⁴ On the contrary, used for emphasis as, then in that case.
DIALOGUE No. 7

Between a Chinese villager, V., and a foreigner, F., meeting for the first time.

The student will note that in Chinese, as in many other languages, there are different ways of addressing a person, according to his education or social status. In this dialogue alternatives are offered for a number of sentences. These are marked respectively C. for common, and P. for polite. You can never go wrong in using the polite form of speech, even to the most rusticated. But if you find that they are embarrassed you can readily adopt the more common and familiar form.

1. F. Hsien shêng hao ma.

2. V. Hsieh hsieh, hsien shêng ni hao. (C.)
   Ch'êng wen. Ch'-êng wen. (P.)

3. F. Hsien shêng (nin) ch'i'h la fan mei yu.

4. V. Ch'i'h la. Hsien shêng (nin) ch'i'h la ma. or
   Hai mei yu ch'i'h. Hsien shêng (nin) ch'i'h la ma.

5. F. P'ien kuo la. (P.)

6. V. Kuei hsing. (P.)
   Hsing shih mo. (C.)

1. Good morning sir, are you well?

2. Thank you, I hope you are well?
   (Thank you) I have received your inquiry.

3. Have you eaten?

4. Yes, have you had your meal?
   No, not yet; have you had your meal?

5. Yes, I am ashamed to say.

6. What is your name?
VOCABULARY OF DIALOGUE No. 7

七 Ch’i.¹ Seven.
2. 承 Ch’êng.² To receive.
問 Wên.² To inquire, ask, a question.
承問 Ch’êng-wên. Used together politely, in reply to any personal inquiry.
3. 您 Nin.² Polite form of Ni—You, Sir.
7. F. Chien (pī) hsing Wang. (P.)
    Wo hsing Wang. (C.)
7. My humble name is Wang.
    My name is Wang.

8. V. T’ai fu. (P.)
8. What is your honourable appellation?

9. F. Ts’ao tzu Ch’ing Chang. (P.)
9. My unworthy (lit. grass) name is Ch’ing Chang.

10. V. Ming tzu chiao shih mo. or
    Shih mo ming tzu. (C.)
10. What is your name?, i.e., given or Christian name.

11. F. Ming chiao Ch’ing Chang. or
    Ch’ing Chang. (C.)
11. My name is Ch’ing Chang. Ch’ing Chang.

The Chinese usually have at least two names, in addition to the surname, one for everyday use and the other for special occasions.

12. V. Hsien shèng to ta nien chi. or
    Hsien shèng to ta sui shu. (C.)
12. How old are you sir?
    Note the expression “to”, introducing questions about quantities, size, age, distance, etc., equivalent to our “how”. “Ma” is sometimes added, e.g., “to ma yuăn”, how far?

13. F. Wu shih wu. or
    Wu shih wu sui.
13. Fifty-five.
    Fifty-five years (old).
7. 賤  Chien.⁴  Humble, mean, low, cheap.

8. 甫  Fu.³  Designation, title or rank, etc., surname.

9. 草  Ts’ao.³  Grass, so humble, used as a term of self-depreciation.

字  Tzu.⁴  The ordinary character for a name, used here in contrast with the very honourable appellation used by the inquirer.

清  Ch’ing.¹  Clear, used as a name.

長  Chang.⁴  A staff, used as a name.

名  Ming.²  Name, not surname, fame.

12. 多  To.¹  Much, many, how many.  With “mo” means How much, how many?

大  Ta.⁴  Big, great.

多大  To-ta.  How big, great, etc.

年  Nien.²  Year, years.

紀  Chi.⁴  To record.

年紀  Nien-chi.  One’s age.

歲  Sui.⁴  The year, years.

數  Shu.⁴  Number, to count, etc.

歲數  Sui-shu.  One’s age.
14. V. Hsien shêng kuei 14. What is your esteemed age? 
Hsien shêng kuei 
chia tzu. (P.)

A question like "kuei chia tzu" might elicit a cryptic reply, as the person asked might indicate the animal which presides over the year of birth. There is a clear question relating to this, viz., "Hsien shêng shu shêmmô ti": "What (animal) do you belong to?" The "chia tzu" refers to the ten stems, which, with the twelve branches combined in pairs, give the Chinese sexagenary cycle (sixty years). Cf. Tennyson's lines in Locksley Hall: "Better fifty years of Europe than a cycle of Cathay." I wonder whether Tennyson knew there was only ten years' difference between the two! The older Chinese were very fond of guessing ages by means of the "animal" system. There are twelve animals, corresponding to the twelve "branches" or horary characters referred to above. The animals, in order of sequence, are: rat, ox, tiger, hare, dragon, serpent, horse, sheep, monkey, cock, dog, boar. These again correspond with certain constellations, and ultimately the calculation of age is based on the particular constellation which was paramount at the time of birth.

15. F. Hsien shêng kao shou. (P.) 15. What is your exalted age sir?
16. V. Hsiung ti hai hsiao, 16. I (younger brother) am still young. I have 
hsû tu la wu shih wu sui. (P.) lived mainly for fifty-five years.

17. V. Hsien shêng kuei 17. Which is your honourable country? 
Kuei kuo shih na i kuo. or
Kuei kuo shih na li. (P.)

kuo Ying Kuo. (P.)

Ying-kuo is England. Ta Ying-kuo is Great Britain.
14. 庚 Kêng.¹ Age, used only in polite language.
    甲子 Chia-tzu. The first term of the Sexagenary cycle, which the Chinese use for the reckoning of time. Here it is a honorific.

15. 高 Kao.¹ High.
    壽 Shou.⁴ Age, old age, long life.

16. 兄 Hsiung.¹ Elder brother.
    弟 Ti.⁴ Younger brother.
    小 Hsiao.³ Small, young.
    虛 Hsû.¹ In vain, empty, useless.
    度 Tu.⁴ To ford, pass over, pass.

17. 英 Ying.¹ Brave, illustrious. Used for England.
19. Where do you hail from? or Where have you come from?

20. I (have) come from Nanking.

21. Where do you reside?

22. Unworthy, my humble abode is at Peip'ing.

23. How far is Peip'ing from here?

Llit. Peip'ing distant here how far?


25. Where are you going sir?

26. I am going to Hankow.

27. Did you travel by sea or overland sir?

20. 南京
   Nan.² South.

21. 處府
   Ch'u.³ Place, dwelling place.
   Fu.³ Home, residence (polite).
   Fu-shang. Residence.
   P'ing.² Peace, level, tranquil, ordinary.

23. 離遠
   Li.² Apart from, separated from.
   Yüan.³ Far, distance, distant.

24. 百里
   Pai. Po.³ ²⁴ Hundred.
   Li.³ The Chinese measure of distance.
   "Li" about one-third of a mile.
   Lu.⁴ Road.

25. 往
   Wang.³ ²⁴ Towards, synonym for "Shang".

26. 漢
   Han.⁴ The word for ancient Chinese dynasty. Part of Hankow.

27. 閣
   Ko.² Council, title of respect. With next means Sir.
   Ko-hsia. Sir.
   Han.⁴ Dry, dry land.

28. 飛機
   Fei.¹ To fly.
   Chi.¹ A machine, opportunity.
   Fei-chi. Aeroplane.
29. V. Tsou la chi t’ien ti kung fu.  29. How many days were you en route?

30. F. I kung ssu t’ien ti kung fu.  30. Four days in all.

31. V. Ai ya, fei ch’ang ti k’uai.  31. I say, that is quick.
29. 工夫  Kung.¹ Work. With the next means time.  
       Fu.¹ A man. With the preceding means time. 
       工夫  Kung-fu. Time in which to do things. 
30. 一共  I-kung. Altogether. 

31. 非常  Fei.¹ Not. With the next means unusual. 
       Ch’ang.² Usual, ordinary. With the preceding means unusual, extraordinary. 
       非常  Fei-ch’ang. Unusual, extraordinary. 
       快  K’uai.⁴ Quick, lively.
DIALOGUE No. 8

1. F. Chia li yu chi ko jên.
2. V. T’ung kung liu ko.
   1. How many are there in your family?
   2. Six in all.

3. F. Fu mu hai tsai ma.
   or
   Fu mu tou tsai pu tsai.
   3. Are your parents living?

4. V. Fu ch’in tsai, mu ch’in pu tsai la.
   4. My father is living, but my mother is dead.

5. F. Ling tsun kao shou.
   (P.)
   5. What is the exalted age of your esteemed father?

6. V. Pa shih erh sui.

7. F. Ling t’ang ch’ü shih, shih to ta nien chi.
   7. What was the age of your honoured mother when she died?

8. V. Wu shih liu sui.
   8. Fifty-six.

10. V. Hsien shêng yu pao chüan mei yu.
    10. Have you a family? (precious wife).

11. F. Hai mei yu ch’èng chia.
    11. I have not yet set up a home (not yet married).
VOCABULARY OF DIALOGUE No. 8

八 Pa. 1 Eight.

2. 統 T’ung. 2 Together, connected.
共 Kung. 4 Together, combined.
統共 T’ung-kung. All together.

3. 父 Fu. 4 Father.
母 Mu. 3 Mother.
父母 Fu-mu. Parents.
在 Tsai. 4 Note special meaning of “to be living”.

4. 親 Ch’in. 1 Close relationship, especially in family or clan.
父親 Fu-ch’in. Father.
母親 Mu-ch’in. Mother.

5. 令 Ling. 4 Honourable, used in ceremonious language.
尊 Tsun. 1 Honourable, used in ceremonious language.
令尊 Ling-tsun. Your honourable father.

6. 堂 T’ang. 2 The hall, principal room, honorific for mother.
令堂 Ling-t’ang. Your mother.
世 Shih. 4 The world, this life, generation.


10. 賓 Pao. 3 Precious, valuable.
眷 Chüan. 4 Family, wife.
賓眷 Pao-chüan. Your family, or wife.

11. 成 Ch’êng. 2 Complete, finish, accomplish, become.
12. V. Hsien shêng ting la hun mei yu.
13. F. Ting la.
14. V. Hsien shêng chieh la hun ma.
   "Ch'ü ch'in" is still heard for "to marry". But "chich hun" is more up to date.
15. F. Chieh la hun la.
16. V. Hsien shêng yu chi ko hai tzu.
17. F. Ssu ko.
18. V. Nan ti yu chi ko [wei. (P.)].
20. V. Hao fu ch'i.
21. F. T'o fu, t'o fu. (P.)
22. V. Hsien shêng ling lang chi wei.
23. F. Hsiao ch'üan liang ko.
24. V. Ling ai yu chi wei. (P.)

**Alternative questions and answers to the foregoing.**

12. Are you engaged?
13. Yes.
14. Are you married?
15. Yes, I am.
16. How many children have you?
17. Four.
18. How many boys?
19. Two boys and two girls.
20. You have great happiness.
21. My happiness is due to you.
22. How many boys (noble princes) have you?
23. Two (small puppies).
24. How many daughters (esteemed loved ones).

The expression "t'o fu" is frequently used after a person has been congratulated, the idea being that such felicity as has been gained is due to the other person's merit.

These sentences are included here for the convenience of the student. They are not often heard in China now. But it is just possible they may be used, and it is well to be ready for the emergency.
12. 訂  
Ting. Fix, settle, become engaged to be married.
婚  
Hun. Marriage, marry.
訂婚  
Ting-hun. To be engaged to be married.

14. 結  
Chieh. To tie a knot, join together.
結婚  
Chieh-hun. To marry, to be married.

16. 孩  
男  
Nan. Male (of human beings).
位  
Wei. Classifier of persons (polite).

19. 女  
Nü. Female (of persons).

20. 福  
Fu. Happiness, felicity.
福氣  
Fu-ch'ì. Happiness, felicity.

21. 托  
T'o. Rely upon, due to, depend on.
郎  
Lang. Prince, your son.

23. 犬  
Ch'üan. Dog, pup.

24. 嫔  
Ai, ngai. Loved, beloved, used of other people's daughters.
24α. F. Hsiao nü liang ko. 24α. Two.
25. V. Hsien shêng kuei kan. or
Hsien shêng yu shih mo ch' ai shih. or
Hsien shêng pan shih mo kung kan. or
Hsien shêng kan shih mo shih. (C.)

What administrative post have you?
What public work are you on?
What do you do?

The difference between "kan", "ch'ai shih" and "kung kan" is as indicated in the vocabulary and dialogue.

26. F. Wo shih ko shang jen. or
Wo tso mai mai. I am in business (buy-sell).

27. V. Hsien shêng fêng la chiao mei yu. 27. Have you joined the Church? or
Are you a member of the Church?

"Chiao" here is a special use of the term, which originally means "instruction". But it is applied to any of the various religions of the country. However, when speaking with foreigners the inquiry would refer specifically to one of the "foreigners'" religions, Protestant or Roman Catholic Churches.

28. F. Tsai chiao. 28. I belong to the Church.
29. V. Shih Yeh su Chiao hai shih T'ien Chu Chiao ni. 29. Are you a Protestant or a Roman Catholic?

30. F. Wo shih Yeh su 30. I am a Protestant.
Chiao. or
Chi Tu Chiao.
    Shih. Affair, matter, business.
    Ch’ai-shih. Commission, public work, appointment.
    Pan. To do, manage, transact.
    Kung. Public, official.


27. Feng. To join, attach oneself to.
    Chiao. Instruction, church.

    Chu. Lord, used of Christ.
    T’ien-chu. Roman Catholic (lit. Heaven’s Lord).
31. V. Chê li yu Yeh su Chiao t'ang. or Chê li yu fu yin t'ang.
32. F. Yu mu shih, nü chiao shih, tsai chê li ma.
   "Chiao-shih" is a term that is commonly used of all foreigners in office in the Church, both men and women. "Chiao-hsi" is teacher, used of those in school work. But "nü", female, is usually prefixed to indicate the women.
33. V. Yu chiao shih, mei yu mu shih.
34. V. Hsien shêng shih mo shih hou tao ti Chung Kuo.
35. F. Wo shih san ko yüeh i ch'ien lai ti.
36. V. Ai ya. Hsien shêng shuo ti Chung Kuo hua chên hao.
37. F. Kuo chang, kuo chang. Wo pu kuo hui chang chi chü.
   "Chiang" is the usual term for "preaching". But as here indicated it also means to speak, perhaps intelligibly!
38. V. and F. Tsai chien, 38. Good-bye, good-bye. tsai chien.
31. 堂音福音  
T'ang.² Hall, church.  
Yin.¹ Sound.  
Fu-yin. Gospel.

32. 牧師士  
Mu.⁴ Shepherd, pastor.  
Shih.⁴ Teacher.  
Shih.⁴ Scholar, teacher.  
Chiao-shih. Teacher (used of missionaries).

35. 前以前  
Ch’ien.² Before, formerly.  
I ch’ien. Before, ago.

37. 不過講  
Pu-kuo. But.  
Chiang.¹ Expound, preach, say.
DIALOGUE No. 9A

THE NUMERALS

I. Cardinals

A. The numbers one to ten are as follows:—
1. One. I.
5. Five. Wu.
7. Seven. Ch’i.

Note that “erh” and “liang” both mean “two”. Amongst the numerals “liang” is used with 2,000, i.e., “liang ch’ien”, and 20,000, which is “liang wan”. In most other cases “erh” is used. However, when “two” is used as a numeral adjective, i.e., when it precedes nouns in a qualifying sense, “liang” is the correct form, e.g.:—

12. Two books. Liang pen shu.

B. The numbers eleven to nineteen are made up of 10 plus the digit, e.g.:—
13. Eleven. Shih i. i.e., ten-one.
14. Seventeen. Shih ch’i. i.e., ten-seven, etc.

C. Exact multiples of ten, i.e., 20–90, are made up by the reverse process, viz., the digit followed by 10, as follows:—
15. Twenty. Erh shih. i.e., two-ten.
16. Eighty. Pa shih. i.e., eight-ten, etc.
VOCABULARY OF DIALOGUE No. 9A

9. 九 Chiu.³ Nine.
D. Hundreds and compound numbers above a hundred (pai) are as follows:—
17. One hundred. I pai.
20. 110. I pai i shih. (or) i pai i.
21. 112. I pai i shih erh.
22. 115. I pai i shih wu.
23. 170. I pai ch’i.
24. 768. Ch’i pai liu shih pa.

Now exercise yourself and your fellow-student in these numbers, using the following sentence:—

E. Where a “nought” comes in the middle of the figures, it is usual, though not the universal practice, to insert “ling”, e.g.:—
27. 209. Erh pai ling chiu.

To leave out the “ling” in combinations of this kind would lead to confusion, as “i pai wu” would be 150.

F. “Thousand” is “ch’ien”. Compounds and multiples of thousands follow these examples, viz.:—
28. 2,000. Liang ch’ien (erh ch’ien is sometimes used).
29. 1,089. I ch’ien ling pa shih chiu. or I ch’ien pa shih chiu.

There is no possibility of confusion in this instance, so the use of “ling” is optional.

30. 3,903. San ch’ien chiu pai ling san (“ling” is necessary).
31. 3,980. San ch’ien chiu pai san (cf. 30).
32. 10,000. I wan.
25. 目
Mu.⁴ Index, list, eye.
Shu-mu-tzu. Number(s), figures.
Fan.¹ To translate, turnover.

26. 零
Ling.² Nought, cipher.

28. 千
Ch’ien.¹ Thousand.

32. 萬
Wan.⁴ Ten thousand, myriad.
33. 11,042. I wan i ch’ien ling ssu shih erh.
34. 30,056. San wan ling wu shih liu.
35. 40,007. Ssu wan ling ch’i ko. or
Ssu wan ling ling ch’i.

The device of adding “ko” in the first of these two alternatives serves to indicate that “seven” is a digit. Only multiply the “ling” when it is absolutely essential for clarity. In reading out complex numbers for records more frequent use is made of “ling”.

II. Ordinals

These are formed by the simple expedient of preceding the Cardinal numbers by “ti”, as follows:—
36. The first. Ti i.

T’ou i ko. (This is a common alternative, lit. Head one piece.)
37. The eighteenth. Ti shih pa.
38. The 135th. Ti i pai san shih wu, etc.

III. Fractions

39. A half. I pan. (One and a half is “i ko pan”.)
40. A tenth. Shih fen chih i.
41. Three-quarters. Ssu fen chih san.
42. Seven-eighths. Pa fen chih ch’i.

All fractional numbers are formed in this way, i.e., by putting the greater number, i.e., the denominator, first, add “fen”, which means “part”, follow this by “chih”, which is a possessive, and then finish by the smaller number, i.e., the numerator. E.g., a tenth is “ten parts one”, or one out of ten, etc.
36. 頭  T'ou.²  Head, first, beginning.

39. 半  Pan.⁴  Half.
40. 分  Fên.¹  A tenth, portion, part, to divide.
    之  Chih.¹  Sign of possessive, like "ti", etc.
DIALOGUE No. 9B

1. A. Ts'ai ti hsia yu chi ko tung-hsi.  1. How many things are there on the floor?
2. B. T'eng i teng, wo shu shu pa.  2. Wait a moment while I count them.
3. A. Tung hsi kou shu pu kou shu ni.  3. Are there any things missing? (lit. are the full number of things there)?

"Kou shu", enough number, so the full number.

4. B. Wo k'an shao (ch'a, tuan) cho i ko.  4. I think there is one short.
5. A. Na mo t'a m'en pi hsü pu shang.  5. Then they must make it up.

6. B. Chin t'ien shih hsing ch'i (li pai) chi.  6. What is the day of the week to-day?
"Hsing ch'i chi". Note how the "chi" comes at the end, What is the number? (Lit. Day of the week how many?)

7. A. Chin t'ien shih hsing ch'i (li pai) san.  7. To-day is Wednesday.
"Li pai san". Here again note the position of "san", three.

8. B. Chin t'ien ch'u chi.  8. What day of the month is it to-day (applies only from first to tenth), 2. from eleventh to twentieth, 3. to the rest.
Chin t'ien shih-chi. Chin t'ien érh shih chi.

9. A. Chin t'ien shih ch'u pa.  9. It is the eighth.
"Ch'u pa". The expression "ch'u" applies to the first ten days of the month.
1. 地
Ti. Earth, floor, locality.

4. 少
Shao. Few, little, short of.

5. 必
Pi. Must, certainly, necessary.
Hsü. Necessary, must, wait, a moment.
Pu. Patch, repair, mend, make up for.

6. 星期
Hsing. Star, spark.
Ch'i. Date, appointed time, expect.
Hsing-ch'i, week.

7. 礼拜
Li. Ceremony, courtesy, politeness.
Pai. Worship, pay respect. Li-pai, week.

8. 初
Ch'u. Beginning, first.
10. B. T'ou i ko yüeh chiao chêng yüeh, mo i ko yüeh (huo ti shih êrh ko yüeh) chiao la yüeh.

11. A. Ch'i yü na chi ko yüeh chiao shêm-mo.

"Ch'i yü ", the remainder. "Ch'i " is equal to " the ", " that ", etc.

12. B. Êrh yüeh, san yüeh, ssu yüeh i chih tao shih i yüeh tou shih i yang (tou shih chao li ti).

"I chih tao " , up to, in a series.
Note that in speaking of the months the numeral precedes, just contrary to what has been said above regarding the days of the week.

13. A. K'o shih shih i yüeh yeh chiao tung yüeh.

13. But the eleventh month is also called Tung Yueh (Winter month).

14. B. Nien ti shih shêm-mo i ssu.

14. What is meant by "nien ti"?

15. A. Nien ti chiu shih la yüeh tsui hou chi t'ien ti i ssu.

15. It means the last few days of the twelfth month.

Compare the expressions for the first and the last. "T'ou " is used for the former and "mo " for the latter. "T'ou chi t'ien ", the first few days. "Hou chi t'ien ", the last few days, when the reference is to a fraction of the whole.

16. B. Kuo nien shih shêm-mo i ssu.

16. What does "kuo nien" mean?
10. 月 Yüeh.⁴ Moon, month.
    正 Chêng.⁴ Right, correct; chief, first month.
    末 Mo.⁴ Last, end, dust, not, branches.
    腊 La.⁴ Twelfth moon, winter sacrifice.

11. 其 Ch’i.² He, she, it.
    餘 Yü.² Surplus. Ch’i yü, the remainder, surplus.

12. 至 Chih.⁴ Reach, reach to, send.
    隨 Sui.² Comply with, according to, follow.
    一直 I chih. Straight.

13. 冬 Tung.¹ Winter.

14. 思 Ssu.¹ Think on, ponder, thought.
17. A. "Kuo nien" chiu shih hsin nien, t'ou i t'ien ti i ssu.

18. B. Pa chê hsieh wan i êrh, fen k'ai kei hai tzu wan.

17. That is the first day of the New Year.

18. Divide these toys up and give them to the children to play with.

19. A. Pa chê hsieh t'ang yeh fên kei t' amen.

19. Divide this toffee amongst them too.

20. B. K'o i, mei i ko jên kei t'a i fen.

20. Yes, let each have a portion.

21. A. Wo i ching fên la liang tz'u.

21. I have divided it twice already.
17. 新  
Hsin.¹ New.

18. 玩艺  
Wan.⁴ Enjoy, amuse, play.
I.⁴ Skill, craft.
玩艺儿 Wan-i-erh. Playthings, toys.
耍 Shua.³ To play, sport, joke.

19. 糖  
T'ang.² Sugar, sweets.

20. 每份  
Mei.³ Each, every.
Fên.¹ A portion.

21. 经  
Ching.¹ Pass through, manage.
已 经 I Ching. Already.
DIALOGUE No. 10

Time by the clock, and other temporal expressions.

1. A. Ni shên shang tai la piao mei yu.
   1. Have you a watch with you?

   2. No, but there is a clock opposite.

3. A. Ni k'an yu chi tien chung.
   3. What time is it? or See what time it is.

4. B. Wo chin shih yen, k'an pu ch'ing ch'u.
   4. I am short-sighted, and cannot see clearly.

"K'an pu ch'ing ch'u", an illustration of two words being used together, with the negative in between to denote a qualification of the verbal action—"see . . . not clear".

5. A. Wo k'an chien la. 5. I can see. It is one 
   Hsien tsai shih (yu) i tien chung.
   "Shih", is, or "yu", have, are both in common use for expressions of time.

   6. Oh dear! I made an appointment with a friend to see him at 12.30. I am already late.

"Tan shih" or "k'o shih" for "but" might be included before "i ching tan wu liao". But, as has been frequently hinted, Chinese are disinclined to use extra words if the sense is already clear.

7. A. Yeh hsü t'a hai tsai, têng ni. 7. Perhaps he is still there, waiting for you.
VOCA LB A RY OF D I A L O G U E No. 10

1. 身 Shên.¹ Body, self.
身上 Shên-shang. On one’s person.
表 Piao.³ Watch.
2. 面 Mien.⁴ Face, front, side, aspect.
對面 Tui-mien. Opposite, the opposite side.
鐘 Chung.¹ Clock, bell.
3. 點 Tien³. A stroke, mark, dot.
幾點鐘 Chi-tien-chung. What is the time?
4. 近 Chin.⁴ Near.
視 Shih.⁴ See, look.
眼 Yen.³ Eye, the eye.
5. 見 Chien.⁴ To see, perceive.
6. 約 Yüeh.¹ Yo.¹ To make an appointment, covenant, bind, agree.
見面 Chien-mien. To see anyone, interview.
已 I.³ Particle used as sign of perfect tense already.
經 Ching.¹ Pass through, pass.
已經 I-ching. Already, past action.
耽 Tan.¹ Obstruct, prevent, delay.
誤 Wu.⁴ To thwart, hinder, delay.
7. 許 Hsü.³ Perhaps, may be.
也許 Yeh-hsü. Perhaps, implying a certain doubt, but not too strong a doubt.
8. B. K‘ung p‘a t’a teng
pu tao wo, tsou
la.
"Teng pu tao", cannot wait. Lit. wait not arrive. "Pu tao" is commonly used with verbs to express inability.

9. A. Hsien tsai chi tien
chung.

9. What time is it now?

10. B. I tien kuo i k‘o. or
I tien i k‘o.

10. A quarter past one.

11. A. Yao shih shih êrh
tien i k‘o, wo hai
k‘o i kan té shang.
"Kan té shang". Lit. catch up get up. Notice the use of "shang", which with "té" is commonly used for ability to do this or that. Cf. note 8 above.

11. If it were a quarter past
twelve I could still
be there in time.

12. B. Yao shih shih êrh
tien ch‘a i k‘o, na
chiu kêng hao.
"Kêng", more, is the most common form of expressing the comparative degree.

12. If it were a quarter to
twelve, it would be
better.

13. A. Hsien tsai chi tien
chung.

13. What time is it now?

14. B. I tien êrh shih wu
fen.

14. Twenty-five minutes
past one.

15. A. Na mo, tsai teng
shih fen chung,
chiu shih liang
tien ch‘a êrh shih
wu fên, shih pu
shih.

15. Then in ten minutes
time (lit. again wait ten minutes), it will be twenty-five min-
utes to two, won’t it?

Note "liang" for two. The other form "erh" is used with most numeral expressions. "Liang" is commonly used before nouns.

"Shih pu shih", is not is, right not right, commonly used at the end of statements to throw what precedes into question form, like the French n’est ce pas, and many other Continental languages.
8. 恐  K’ung.\(^3\) Fear.
    怕  P’a.\(^4\) Fear, afraid.
    恐怕  K’ung-p’a.  Fear, I fear.

10. 刻  K’o.\(^4\) A quarter, fifteen minutes.
11. 趕  Kan.\(^3\) To catch up, pursue, drive.

12. 更  Kêng.\(^4\) Sign of comparative, more, more so.
    差  Ch’a.\(^1\) Short of, to err, differ, also read Ch’ai\(^1\), to send.
16. B. Pu ts’o, pu ts’o. 16. Quite so (lit. not wrong).
   "Pu ts’o", not wrong, a common alternative to "tui la", right, and used in same sense.

17. A. Ch’ü nien hsia t’ien, 17. Where did you go last
   ni shang na’erh Summer, to avoid
   pi shu ch’ü ti. the great heat?

18. B. Ch’ü nien wo mên 18. We did not go any-
   na’erh yeh mei yu where last year, but
   ch’ü. Ch’ien nien the year before last
   wo mên tao Lao we went to Lao Shan
   Shan ch’ü, pi shu to escape the heat.
   ti.
   "Na’erh yeh mei yu ch’ü", "anywhere also have not gone", so "we went nowhere". This is a very common idiom. Cf. sentence 20 for another example.

   hui lai i hou, tso you returned from
   la shih mo. Lao Shan?
   "I hou", after, like "i ch’ien", before (see 11 29) follows the verb
to which it refers.

20. B. Shih mo yeh mei yu 20. I did nothing. I just
   tso, wo tsai chia remained idly at
   li hsien cho. home.

21. A. Ts’ung ch’ien ni pu 21. Weren’t you fond of
   shih ai ta wang tennis at one time?
   ch’iu ma.

22. B. Na ko shih hou, ta 22. In those days I liked
   wang ch’iu, t’i both tennis and foot-
   chüeh ch’iu, tou ball.
   shih wo hsi huan
   ti.
16. 錯  Ts'o.⁴ Wrong, fault.
17. 夏  Hsia.⁴ Summer.
  避  Pi.⁴ Avoid, escape, flee.
  伏  Fu.² Summer heat.
  暑  Shu.³ Summer heat.
18. 前  Ch‘ien.² Before.
  前年  Ch‘ien nien. The year before last.
  嶂  Lao.³ Name of hill.
  山  Shan.¹ Hill, mountain.
19. 從  Ts‘ung.² From, follow, obey.
  後  Hou.⁴ After, behind.
20. 閒  Hsien.² Leisure, idle.
21. 愛  Ai.⁴ To love, to like.
  打  Ta.³ To beat, strike, to play at . . .
  球  Ch‘iu.⁴ Ball.
  打球  Ta ch‘iu. To play with a ball, tennis.
  打網球  Ta wang ch‘iu. Tennis, to play tennis.
22. 網  Wang.³ Net; see the last.
  腳  Chiao.² Chüeh.² Foot.
  腳球  Chüeh-ch‘iu. Football.
  踢  T‘i.¹ To kick.
  喜  Hsi.³ Joy, glad, pleased.
23. A. Na mo, ni hou t'ien lai, ho wo ta wang ch'iu, hao ma.

24. B. Ta hou t'ien hsing pu hsing.

25. A. Pu kan shuo, yin wei ch'ien t'ien wo ho i ko p'êng yu yo hao, ta hou t'ien ho t'a ta p'ai.

26. B. Na mo, chiu shih hou t'ien pa.

23. Then come and play tennis with me the day after to-morrow; does that appeal?

24. Will three days hence do?

25. I can't say. The day before yesterday I fixed up with a friend to play cards with him three days hence.

26. Then let it be the day after to-morrow.

27. A. Hao, ni tai liang ko ch'iu p'ai tzu lai.

27. Good, bring two racquets with you.
22. **歡** Huan.¹ Rejoice, pleased.
    **喜歡** Hsi-huan. To be pleased.

24. **大後天** Ta-hou-t’ien. Three days hence.

25. **因** Yin.¹ Cause, because.
    **為** Wei.² Because, do, make, be.
    **朋** P’êng.² Friend, comrade, associate.
    **友** Yu.³ Friend.
    **定** Ting.⁴ Fix, settle, certain.
    **規** Kuei.¹ Rule, fix.
    **定規** Ting-kuei. To have arranged, settled, settle, fix.
    **牌** P’ai.³ Cards, dominoes.
    **打牌** Ta p’ai. To play cards, etc.

27. **拍** P’ai.² To beat, clap, etc.
    **球拍子** Ch’iu-p’ai-tzu. Tennis racquet.
DIALOGUE No. 11

More about watches, and expressions of time.

1. A. Ni yu piao mei yu. 1. Have you a watch?
2. B. Mei yu. Tan shih wo chia li yu i tso chung.
   2. No, but there is a clock at home.

Note that expressions of place or time tend to come early in Chinese sentences. Here "tsai chia li", or "chia li", at home, comes first, whereas in English we put such expressions last.

"Tso", a classifier for clock, bell, etc.

3. A. Na ko chung tui pu tui.
3. Is the clock right?
4. B. Pu tui, na ko chung tsou tê man.
4. No, that clock is slow (lit. goes slow).
5. A. Wo ti piao tsou tê k’uai.
5. My watch gains (lit. goes fast).
6. B. Na mo, tê pa k’uai man kai i kai.
6. Then you must alter the regulator.

"K’uai man", lit. quick, slow, a good illustration of the way in which adjectives of opposite meaning are joined together to express the abstract noun connected with the idea of both. Here, e.g., "k’uai man" means speed, regulator.

7. A. Kai la, yeh mei yu yung.
7. I have altered it, but without effect.
8. B. Tsên yang mei yu yung ni.
8. How is that?
9. My watch is unreliable (goes without a standard).
10. B. Na mo, ni ti piao tê hsiu li.
10. Then your watch should be repaired.
VOCABULARY OF DIALOGUE No. 11

2. 座 Tso.⁴ The classifier of clocks, bells, etc.

4. 走慢 Tsou.³ To go, walk, movement of any kind.
   Man.⁴ Slow.
5. 快慢 K’uai.⁴ Quick, quickly.
   K’uai-man. The speed, speed.
6. 改 Kai.³ Alter, change.

7. 用 Yung.⁴ Use, usefulness.

9. 準 Chun.³ Standard, a standard.

10. 修理 Hsiu.¹ Repair, put in order.
    Li.² Adjust, arrange.
11. A. Pu ts’o. K’o shih pu chih tao shui nèng t’i wo hsiu li.

“T’i” or “kei” are used for the Dative Case, to do anything for anyone.

12. B. Wo jen te’i ko chung piao chiang.

“Jen te’”, to know a person. “Chih tao”, to know, is used mostly of things and affairs.

13. A. Hao, ni na wo ti piao, chiao t’a k’an k’an, hao pu hao.

“Hao pu hao”, lit. good not good, used at end of statements, like “shih pu shih” above (see Dialogues 10, 15) to throw statement into polite form of question.

14. B. K’o i. Pu kuo chin t’ien shang wu, wo mei yu kung fu.

15. A. Hsia wu ni yu kung fu mei yu.


17. A. Lao chia, lao chia.

17. Thank you very much. Sorry to trouble you.

18. B. Na mei yu shih mo.

18. That’s nothing.
10. 修理  Hsiu-li.  To repair.

11. 能  Nêng.²  Can, able.
    替  T'î.⁴  For, instead of.

12. 認  Jên.⁴  To recognise, to know, acknowledge.
    認得  Jên-tê.²  To recognise, be acquainted with, to know.
    匠  Chiang.⁴  An artisan.
    鐘表匠  Chung-piao-chiang.  A watch-maker.

13. 拿  Na.²  To take, take hold of.

14. 午  Wu.³  Noon.
    上午  Shang-wu.  Forenoon.
    工  Kung.¹  Work, task.
    工夫  Kung-fu.  Time, leisure.

15. 下  Hsia.⁴  Below, beneath.
    下午  Hsia-wu.  Afternoon.

16. 定  Ting.⁴  Fix, settle, certain.
    一定  I-ting.  Certainly, without doubt.
    要  Yao.⁴  In the sense of “if”, introducing the Conditional mood.
    後  Hou.⁴  After, afterwards, later.
    後半天  Hou-pan-t’ien.  Afternoon (later half day).

17. 勢  Lao.²  To trouble, hinder.
    駕  Chia.⁴  Chariot, progress.

“Neng lai pu nêng lai”, lit. can come no can come”, the usual form of verbal question.

19. I am inviting a few friends to dinner this evening. Can you come?

20. B. Pu kan tang. Wo hai yu shih.

20. Thank you, but I have something else on.

21. A. Ni tsui hao nêng lai. Wo ch’ing ni p’ei k’o.

21. I do hope you can come. I want you to help to entertain the guests (lit. best you can come, I want, etc.).

22. B. Ch’ih fan yao chi ko chung t’ou.

22. How long will the meal last?

“Chung t’ou” is actual hours of protracted time. “Tien” in “tien chung” is used of hours of time by the clock.

23. A. Ta kai yung liang ko chung t’ou.

23. Probably about two hours.

“Ta-kai”, probably, on the whole, etc. “Kai” means a summary of anything. “Ta” is big, so big summary, summarising the matter.

24. B. Ch’ih la fan i hou, yao ta p’ai ma.

24. Are you going to play cards after dinner?

25. A. Sui pien. Wo tzu chi tao hsiang hsia chi p’an ch’i.

25. Just as you please. For myself I should like a few games of chess.
17. 劳驾 Lao-chia. Polite expression of thanks. Lit. I have hindered your chariot.
21. 最 Tsui. Most, every.

陪同 P’ei. To accompany, entertain, help to entertain.
陪同客 P’ei-k’o. Help to entertain guests.

22. 鐘頭 Chung-t’ou. An hour, an hour’s time.
概 Kai. All, general.

23. 大概 Ta-kai. Probably, presumably.

25. 便 Pien. Convenient; read p’ien, cheap.
随便 Sui-pien. Suit your own convenience, be at ease.

自己 Tzu. Self, natural, from.
自己 Chi. Self, personal.
自己 Tzu-chi. Oneself.
盘 P’an. Plate, board, classifier of games of chess.
下棋 Hsia. To play (chess), with the following.
棋 Ch’i. Chess.
26. B. Ni mên hsia ch’i, ta chia k’o i ch’u ch’ü, kuang i ku-ang.

26. You play chess, the rest (lit. all) will go out for a stroll.

27. A. Na tao pu hsing.

Nü k’o k’o i tso chên hsien, nan k’o ch’ih yen, t’an t’an pa.

27. That won’t do. The ladies can get on with their sewing, while the gentlemen smoke and chat.

Here “ tao ” comes in again—meaning “ on the contrary ”.

28. B. Tsa mên pu tao pan yeh i ch’ien, pu hui fên shou ti.

(In that case) we shall not be able to break up before midnight.

“ Fên shou ”, lit. divide or separate hands, is used of “ taking one’s leave or departure ”.

29. A. Shih i tien chung i ch’ien, hui ch’ü chiu hao.

29. If you leave before eleven, that should be all right.
26. 大家  Ta-chia. All together, the group.
   逛  Kuang. Stroll, visit.
   逛逛  Kuang-kuang. To take a stroll.
27. 倒  Tao. A strong adversative, but, nevertheless, on the contrary, to fall.
   銷  Chên. Needle, needle-work (with the next).
   線  Hsien. Thread, needle-work (with the last).
   銷線  Chên-hsien. Needle-work.
   男  Nan. Male.
   客  K’o. Guest, traveller.
   喫煙  Ch’ih-yen. To smoke.
   抽煙  Ch’ou-yen. To smoke.
   談  T’an. To chat, talk, gossip.
   講  T’an t’an. To have a chat.
DIALOGUE No. 12

Between Master and Servant on domestic matters, such as windows, doors, boxes, buckets and the well.

Master, M. Servant, S.

1. M. Pa ch’uang hu kuan shang.
   1. Close the window.

Note again that "pa" introduces the object of the verb, and that the main verb comes after the object in this construction.

2. S. K’ung p’a kuan pu shang.

Here we have another illustration of the rule of a negative coming between the two parts of a composite verb to express "impossibility" of the action being performed.

4. S. Yu mao ping.

3. How is that?
4. There is something wrong.

"Mao" is a fault—a defect.
"Ping" is a positive flaw—like a sickness.
"Mao ping" together equals "something wrong".

5. M. Yu shih mo mao ping.
6. S. Chê chi t’ien, t’ien ch’i fa ch’ao, chiao ch’uang hu k’uang tsu tsou la fêng.

5. What is wrong with it?
6. The weather has been very damp the last few days, and the window-frame has become warped.

"T’ien"—notice the various uses of this one word—day, weather, heaven, the heavens, etc.

Learn to use "fa" in the sense of "to be", "to become", "to be in a state of"; e.g., "hsin li fa mên"—I am sad. Literally—in my heart is produced sadness.

"Chiao"—to cause, causing, equivalent to our English "so that", and when used with a verb forming the passive voice.
VOCABULARY OF DIALOGUE No. 12

1. 窗戸 Ch’uāng.¹ Window.
    窗戸 Hu.⁴ A hole, opening, screen.
    窗戸-戸 Ch’uāng-hu. Window.
    關 Kuan.¹ To close, bar, put to.

4. 毛病 Mao.² Defective, hair, surface.
    毛病 Ping.⁴ Disease, illness.
    毛病 Mao-ping. Fault, defect, flaw.

6. 氣 Ch’i.⁴ Atmosphere, air, etc.
    天 T’ien.¹ Heaven, the upper air.
    天氣 T’ien-ch’i. The weather.
    發 Fa.¹ To produce, become.
    潮 Ch’ao.² Damp, dampness, humid, tide.
    框 K’uang.⁴ Frame.
    縫 Fêng.² A seam, split, crack.

The Chinese are fond of repetition of the verb, especially when positive action is to be expressed.

7. Then we had better call in a carpenter to put it right.

8. S. Shih ti. Wo chiao Li Ssu fu lai, k'an i k'an.

"Shih ti"—equal to "right!", "yes!", etc.

8. Yes, I will call in Craftsman Lee to come and look at it.

9. M. Ch'ien mên so shang la mei yu.

9. Is the front door locked?

10. S. So shang la. or So pu shang. Na ko so shang la hsiu.

"Shang la hsiu". "Shang" is "to add to", "become"; "hsiu" is rust. So "add rust"—rusty.

10. Yes, it is locked. or I can't lock it. The lock is rusty.

11. M. Na yao shih lai, shih i shih.

11. Bring the key and let us try it.

You could say "Pa yao shih na lai". Both constructions are common and equally correct.

"Shih i shih"—try a try—one the verbal form, the other a noun.

12. S. Tsui hao hsien t'u i tie'rh yu.

"Tsui hao"—literally "the best"—indicating that any course of action other than the one suggested would be inferior—so "It would be best to do... so and so".

12. We had better try a little oil first.

13. M. Ni shuo ti tui, hsien t'u i tie'rh yu pa.

13. You are right, first put a little oil on.

"Ni shuo ti" is a shortened form of the relative clause "Ni so shuo ti"—what you have said.

14. M. Pa hou mên k'ai k'ai pa.

14. Open the back door.

"K'ai k'ai". You could also use "K'ai i k'ai"—"open an opening"—on lines of 11 above.
7. 木
   木匠
   Mu.4 Wood, timber.
   Mu-chiang. Carpenter, joiner.

8. 司
   夫
   司夫
   Ssu.1 Master, manager, control.
   Fu.1 A master of craft.
   Ssu-fu. A leading workman, foreman, skilled artisan.

9. 前
   鎖
   Ch’ien.2 Front, before.
   So.3 Lock, to lock.

10. 錫
    Hsiu.4 Rust, to rust.

11. 鎖
    鑰匙
    Yao.4 Yo.4 A key.
    Shih.3 A key, a spoon.
    Yao-shih. A key.
    Shih.4 To try, to test, experiment.

12. 塗
    油
    T’u.2 To grease, to oil, smear.
    Yu.2 Oil, fat, grease.

14. 開
    K’ai.1 To open.
15. S. Na ko mên wo i ching k'ài la.
   "I ching"—already passed—so "already", the commonest expression for things already done.

16. M. Pu yao tsai kuan shang.

17. S. Yao shih pa mên ch'ang k'ai, k'ung p'a hsiao t'ou chin lai, t'ou tung hsi.
   "Yao" usually means "want", and so it may be interpreted here—"if you want" to leave, etc., and so it becomes a sign of the Conditional mood.

16. Keep it open (lit. don't close it again).

17. But if we leave the door wide open, I fear that thieves might come in and steal some things.

18. M. K'o pu shih ma.

18. That is so. You had better close the door.

19. S. Chè ko p'ing tsu ti sai tsu, wo ch'ü pu ch'ü lai.
   "Ch'ü pu ch'ü lai"—literally take not come out.

19. I can't extract the cork out of this bottle.

   That is because you haven't a suitable gadget. You must use a corkscrew.

21. M. Pa chê ko hsiang tzu ta k'ai.
21. Open this box.
16. Kuan.¹ To close, bar, put to.

17. Ch’ang.³ To open, wide open, disclose.

T’ou.¹ To steal, a thief.

19. P’ing.² Bottle, vase.

Sai.⁴ Se.⁴ Cork, stopper.

Ch’ü.² To take off or out.

20. Yin.¹ Cause, reason.

Wei.⁴ Because, on account of.

Yin-wei. Because.

Shih.⁴ Pattern, shape, fashion.

Ho-shih. Suitable.

Lo.² Conch, small screw.

Ssu.¹ Wire, thread.

Chuan.³ To turn—re, again.

Lo-ssu-chuan. A corkscrew.

21. Hsiang.¹ Box.

Hsia.² Small box, crate.
Pa chê ko hsia tzu ta k’ai.
Pa chê ko ho tzu ta k’ai.
Pa chê ko t’ung tzu ta k’ai.

22. S. K’ai chê ko hsiang tzu, hên fei shih.

23. M. Tsên yang fei shih ni.

Note “ni” at the end of a question which already contains an interrogative word or phrase; here “tsên-ni”—how?

24. S. Ting tzu t’ai to, ch’üan tou shang hsiu la.

Note position of “tou”; it always comes “second”. At any rate it never occupies the first place in a sentence or clause.


You cannot say “Ni shang Wang hsien sheng ch’ü”. You must add the “na-li” after the name to express motion towards a person.

26. S. Yao shih Wang sheng pu tsai chia, wên shui ch’ü chieh ni.

Note “pu tsai chia” for not at home. Do not say “pu tsai” or “pu tsai la”, as that would mean “he is dead”.

“Wên”, “ken” or “ho” are all permissible—meaning “of” or “from” whom.

27. M. T’a chia li tsung yu yung jên, chiu hsiang t’a chieh, hao la.

“Tsung yu” or “pi shih yu” for “there must be”.

Open this small box.
Open this tin.
Open this tin, bucket, etc.
22. This box is hard to open.
23. What is the trouble?
24. There are too many nails and they are all rusty.
25. That’s a small matter (lit. easy to manage).
26. But suppose Mr. Wang is not at home, whom shall I ask for the loan of them?
21. 盒简  
   Ho.² A tin or box, casket.  
   T'ung.² A tin, container.

22. 費事  
   Fei.⁴ Waste, expend.  
   Fei-shih. A wasteful affair, difficult.

24. 釘全  
   Ting.¹ A nail, to nail.  
   Ch’uan.³ All.

25. 鉗  
   Ch’ien.² Pincers, tongs.

27. 用人  
   Yung-jen. Servant, one used.  
   Tsung.³ Certainly.  
   Hsiang.⁴ Towards, of, etc.
28. S. Shih ti, wo chiu ch’ü.

29. M. Ni ching kuo yün tzu ti shih hou, k’an k’an shui ching, kai shang la mei yu.

29. As you pass through the garden (yard), just look to see if the well is covered.

Note this circumlocutory clause with the “when” represented by “ti-shih-hou” at the end. Literally “your passing over the yard’s time”.

30. S. Wo chin t’ien ch’ing tsa, ta wan la shui, chiu pa ching kai shang la.

30. I covered the well, after I had finished drawing water, early this morning.

31. M. Ni na chi ko t’ung tzu, tou ch’êng (tao) man la shui ma.

31. Have you filled all those buckets with water?

32. S. Chia li so yu ti t’ung tzu, wo tou ch’êng man la shui.

32. I have filled all the buckets there are in the house with water.

“So yu ti” = “what there are”, equal to “all that there are”.

33. M. Yün tzu li na ko ta shui kang, chuang ti shih tsang shui, ni tao ch’u ch’ü la mei yu.

33. That big water butt in the garden was full of dirty water. Have you poured it all out?

After “yuan tzu li” you don’t need to add “ti”, the possessive, although the sense seems to require it. The “na ko” takes the place of the “ti”.
29. 園 Yüan.² Courtyard, garden.
井 Ching.³ A well.
蓋 Kai.⁴ To cover.

30. 清 Ch’ing.¹ Dawn, daybreak.
早 Tsao.³ Early.
打 Ta.³ To draw up.
完 Wan.² To finish, complete.

31. 桶 T’ung.³ A bucket, barrel.
盛 Ch’êng.² To fill, fill up; to contain. Also read sheng⁴, abundant, flourishing.
滿 Man.³ Full, to fill.

32. 所 So.³ The relative pronoun. That which, those which, etc.
所有的 So-yu-ti. What there is.

33. 缸 Kang.¹ Butt, large vessel for water, etc., cistern.
裝 Chuang.¹ To contain—fill in, load, pack.
髒 Tsang.¹ Dirty, filthy.
倒 Tao.⁴ To pour, upset.
倒出去 Tao ch’u ch’ü. To pour away.
34. S. Wo pa na ko tsang shui, wan ch‘üan tao ch‘u ch‘ü la, i tie’rh yeh mei yu liu.

The repetition for the purposes of emphasis of "wan ch‘üan", in the form "wan wan ch‘üan ch‘üan ti", is very common. "Tao ch‘u ch‘ü"—the "ch‘ü" suggests throwing away from you. If it were "tao ch‘u lai" that sense would not necessarily be implied. Note position of "i tie’rh" for emphasis—"even one drop is not left".

35. M. Wo pa i chien shih ch‘ing wang chi la.

35. I have forgotten something.

36. S. Shih shih mo shih ch‘ing.

36. What is that?


37. Is the water in our well bitter or sweet?

38. S. Shih t‘ien ti, k‘o i yung lai chu fan, p‘ao ch’a.

38. Sweet, usable for cooking or making tea.
34. 完全
全留
Wan-ch’üan. Complete, perfect.
Ch’üan.³ Perfect, complete, the whole.
Liu.³ To leave, retain, keep.

35. 忘記
Wang.² To forget.
Chi.⁴ To remember.
Wang-chi. To forget, sic. forget to remem-
ber!
Chien.¹ An article, item, classifier.

37. 苦甜
K’u.³ Bitter.
T’ien.² Sweet.

38. 煮
Chu.¹ To boil, cook.
DIALOGUE No. 13

Talk with Servant on domestic matters—continued.

1. *M.* Pa chê i chang cho  
   1. Take this table upstairs.

   Note ""chang"" as the classifier of tables, benches, etc., also that verbs of movement usually carry an auxiliary, like ""tao"", to arrive.

2. *S.* I ko jën pan pu tung, tê chiao chi ko jën lai pang mang.
   2. But one man can't move it. I must get a few men to help.

   The positive of ""pan pu tung""—""can't move it""—is ""pan tung la""—can be moved, or can move it; so with all expressions of this kind.

3. *M.* Yao chi ko jën pang mang.
   3. How many men will you need to help?

   "Pang mang"—literally "help busy".

4. *S.* Chih shao yao san ko jën.

5. *M.* Ku san ko jën lai t'ai chotzu, ching chi pu shang suan.

   "Pu shang suan"—"not up reckon"—no advantage.

6. *S.* K'o chên pu shang suan. Pu ju ku t'a men i t'ien ti kung fu, hai k'o i chiao t'a mên tso pieh ti shih ch'ing.

   "Chiao" is "to cause" give them to do.

   "Pieh ti"—something different.

6. Truly it is not economical. We had better hire them for the day so that we can give them other things to do as well.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Chinese Characters</th>
<th>Pinyin</th>
<th>English Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>張</td>
<td>Chang</td>
<td>Classifier of tables, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>桌</td>
<td>Cho</td>
<td>Table</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>搬</td>
<td>Pan</td>
<td>To move, remove, transport.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>樓</td>
<td>Lou</td>
<td>A second storey, tower, upper storey,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>帮</td>
<td>Pang</td>
<td>Help, assist.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>忙</td>
<td>Mang</td>
<td>Busy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>動</td>
<td>Tang</td>
<td>To move.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>至</td>
<td>Chih</td>
<td>Extreme, reach to, utmost.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>少</td>
<td>Shao</td>
<td>Few, little (of quantity).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>履</td>
<td>Ku</td>
<td>To hire.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>經</td>
<td>Ching</td>
<td>To manage.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>濟</td>
<td>Ching</td>
<td>To help, save, up to the mark.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>經濟</td>
<td>Ching chi</td>
<td>Economic.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>算</td>
<td>Suan</td>
<td>To reckon, calculate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>上算</td>
<td>Shang suan</td>
<td>To be of advantage, economical. Lit. reckon on top side.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>別</td>
<td>Pieh</td>
<td>Other, another, extra, part from, separate.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
7. Na shih tzu jan ti.
   Hai yu shêm-mo
   shih, chiao t'a
   mên tso ni.

8. Shih ch'ing tao pu
   shao. T'a mên
   k'ê i ta sao yüan
   tzu, shou shih
   ch'u fang.

"Shih ch'ing tao pu shao"—"affairs on contrary not few".
"Tao" is used to express something different from what has been
proposed, either explicitly or implicitly.

9. Ku chê chung jen,
   i t'ien tê kei to
   shao kung ch'ien.

"I t'ien"—one day—also a whole day.
"Tê to shao"—ought how much?

10. Chê yang ti jên tu
    suan hsiao kung.
    I t'ien kei t'a liu
    mao ch'ien chiu
    hsing.

11. Ku liang ko jên pu
    kou ma.

12. Pu kou. Chê ko cho
    tzu hên chung,
    liang ko jên t'ai
    pu tung.

"T'ai"—to carry—is used when two or more people are employed.
For one person to carry on one's shoulder "tan" or "t'iao" is used.

13. Na mo chiu ku san
    ko jên pa. T'a
    mên chi tien
    chung shang
    kung.

"Shang kung"—go up to work. Note the verbal use of "shang"
—it is in the third tone when used as a verb.

8. 捕  Sao.  To sweep.
    打掃  Ta sao.  Sweep, big sweep.
    收拾  Shou.  To receive, collect, gather.
    收拾  Shih.  Arrange, pick up.
    厨房院  Shou-shih.  Arrange, tidy up.
    厨房  Ch’u.  Cook (house)—kitchen cook.
    院  Fang.  A room.
    厨房  Ch’u-fang.  Kitchen.
    院  Yuan.  A court-yard.

10. 都工  Tu.  All, both, altogether.
    小工  Kung.  Work, labour.
    毛工  Hsiao-kung.  Coolie, labourer (lit. small labour).
    毛  Mao.  A ten cent. coin, ten cents.


12. 重  Chung.  Heavy, cumbersome.
    提  T’ai.  Lift, carry between two, or on shoulders.
14. **S.** Tsao shang liu tien chung shang kung, wan shang liu tien chung hsia kung.

15. **M.** Hsiu hsi chi ko chung t'ou.

"Chung t'ou"—not "chung tien"—the latter being confined to time by the clock. If you want to use "chung tien" you must add "ti kung fu"; e.g., "hsiu hsi chi . . . tien chung ti kung fu".

16. **S.** Chung wu t'a men yao hsieh I ko pan chung t'ou.

One and a half—"i ko pan".

17. **M.** Chiu che yang ti pan pa.

18. **M.** Pa cheh chi pa i tzu pan tao na pien ch'ü.

19. **S.** Na pien mei ye k'ung ti, wo hsiang fang tsai wai t'ou hao.

20. **M.** K'o shih pa i tzu lao tiu tsai wai pien, pu ta hao, hai pu ju na tao ti yin tzu li mien ch'ü.

14. They will start at six a.m. and finish at six p.m.

15. How many hours off for rest?

16. They will rest an hour and a half at noon.

17. Then we will proceed along these lines.

18. Move these chairs to that side.

19. There is no room over there. I think it will be good (better) to put them outside.

20. But to leave chairs outside for any length of time (lao) is not very good. It would be better to take them into the cellar.
Hsia 下 Down, to put down, to go down.

15. 休憩  Hsiu 休憩. Rest, recuperate, relax.
Hsi 休憩. Rest, to rest.
鐘頭 Chung-t’ou. Hour, of protracted time.

16. 中午歇  Chung-wu 中午歇. Mid-day, noon.
Hsieh 朝歇. To rest, ease off.

18. 把椅  Pa 把椅. Classifier of chairs, etc.
I 椅 Chair, couch.
Tao 起 To arrive, get to, at.
Pien 一邊 Side, one side.

19. 地空  Ti 地空. Ground, floor, etc.
K’ung 空 Empty.
K’ung-ti 空地 Room, in the sense of space.
Lit. empty ground.

想放  Hsiang 想放. To think, reflect.
Fang 放 To put, place, set down, to let go.
Wai 走外 Outside, foreign.
Wai-t’ou 走外頭 Outside, in the open.

20. 老外  Lao 老外. A long time, old.
Tiu 走外 To leave.
Wai-pien 走外邊 Outside, out of doors.
Yin 隐子 A cellar, underground, secret.
Ti-yin-tzu 地隠子 The cellar, basement.
21. **S.** Wo hsiang ch’i i ko hao fa tzu lai.
   "Hsiang ch’i . . . lai" is the usual expression. Note how much comes between the parts of this compound verb—the whole subject of thought.

22. **M.** Shih shêm-mo fa tzu.

23. **S.** Hsien pa chê i t’iao ch’ang cho tzu, pan tao k’o fang li ch’ü.

24. **M.** Shih ti, i hou tsai tso shêm-mo ni.

25. **S.** Tsai pa chê i t’iao teng tzu tiao kuo lai, chiu yu ti fang, fang chê chi pa i tzu la.

26. **M.** Shih ti, chiu chê yang ti pan pa.

27. **S.** Hsien-shêng tê hsien jang wo pa cho tzu shang ti tung hsi pan tsou.

28. **M.** Tzu jan. Tsai huan i chang kan ching ti cho pu.
   "Chang"—classifier of table-cloth.

29. **S.** Wan shang ch’ing k’o pu ch’ing k’o.

30. **M.** Ch’ing ssu wei k’o, so i yao shou shih fan t’ing.
   "So i", generally speaking, is equivalent to our "so", "and so", "therefore", etc.
21. 起 Ch‘i.² To rise, arise, get up, spring up.
   想起 Hsiang-ch‘i. To think of a thing.
   法 Fa.³ Method, manner, rule.
   法子 Fa-tzu. Method, way of doing things.

23. 先 Hsien.¹ First, in the front.
   條 T‘iao.² Classifier of long things, like long tables, benches, etc.
   客房 K‘o-fang. Guest-room, drawing-room.
   裡 Li.³ Inside, within.
   以後 I-hou. Afterwards, behind.

25. 發 Têng.⁴ Form, bench, long-seat.
    掉 Tiao.⁴ To change round, turn round, twist round.
    掉過去 Tiao-kuo-lai. To turn around.

26. 辦 Pan.⁴ To do, transact, manage.

27. 讓 Jang.⁴ To allow, permit.

28. 換 Huan.⁴ To change.
    乾 Kan.¹ Dry, clean.
    淨 Ching.⁴ Clean.
    乾淨 Kan-ching. Clean.
    布 Pu.⁴ Cloth.

30. 所以 So-i. Therefore, so (logical conclusion).
    應 T‘ing.¹ Court, hall.
    飯廳 Fan-t‘ing. Dining-room.
31. S. Ta-ssu-fu hsiao pu hsiao tê.
   "Ta-ssu-fu"—the cook, often the senior member of domestic staff—chef.
   Note "hsiao pu hsiao te", but often the whole compound verb is duplicated.

32. M. Hsiao tê. Wo tso t’ien fên fu la t’a. 32. Yes, he knows. I gave him his orders yesterday.

33. S. Na mo, wo chiu hao hao êrh ti yû pei. 33. Then I will prepare everything in applepie order.
   "Hao hao êrh ti"—thoroughly, very well.

34. M. Hao. Ti t’an yao sao i sao; hsi tzu yao fan kuo lai; ch’i chû yao hsi kan ching; tuan fan ti-shih hou, yao ling li, shih-mo tou yao chêng chêng ch’i ch’i ti.
   "Shih-mo tou yao", lit. "anything all want", equal to "everything should be".

35. S. Shih ti, t’ing hsien-shêng ti fên fu. 35. Right, I will carry out your instructions.
   "T’ing"—to listen—has the sense of "obey" when coupled with words which imply an order or advice, etc.
31. 大司夫  Ta-ssu-fu. The skilled person, ganger, cook.
    Hsiao.³  To know.
    Hsiao-tê  To know (concerning affairs), not persons.

32. 吩咐  Fên.¹  To order, command.
    Fu.⁴  To commission, order.
    Fên-fu. To order, command, instruct (in the sense of issuing an order).

33. 預備  Yü.⁴  Beforehand, prepare.
    Pei.⁴  Get ready, prepare.
    Yü-pei. To prepare, to get ready.

34. 毯席  T’an.³  Carpet, felt.
    Hsi.²  Mat, reed mat.
    Fan.²  To turn over.
    Ch’i⁴-chü. Utensils, furniture.
    Hsi.³  To wash, bathe, rinse.
    Tuan.¹  To serve, as a waiter, put on the table.
    Ling.²  Clever, active, adjust.
    Li.⁴  Lively, quick, smart.
    Chêng³-ch’i.²  In good order, straight, orderly, arranged.
Exercise on Weights and Measures

Weights.

A Chinese catty, "chin", is equal to about 21 ozs. (English), but consists of 16 "liang" (oz.). The "liang" is again divided into "ch’ien", each of which is a tenth of a "liang". Below that the metric system continues into several divisions, the "fèn" being a tenth of a "ch’ien" and the "li" being a tenth of a "fèn". Other extremely fine measures of weight need not bother us here. The picul, in China about 133 lbs., is used for heavier articles. The word for this is "tan".

1. Chê ko tung hsi yu to chung.
   "Yu to chung"—has how much weight? Alternative expressions are "Yu to shao fèn liang", "Fèn liang to chung", "Yu to ma ch’ing chung".

2. I tan chiu chin pan.

3. Ch'ing ni kei wo ch’êng i ch’êng chê ko pao kuo. Mei yu kuo chung pa.
   "Chiu ching"—really, getting to the heart of the matter.

4. Kuo la chung la.

5. Chiu ching yu to chung.
   "Chiu ching"—really, getting to the heart of the matter.

6. Pa chin ch’i liang pa ch’iien.
   "Chiu ching"—really, getting to the heart of the matter.

In measuring grain the Chinese use standard vessels, called "tan", "tou", "shêng", etc. The "tan", which for want of a better term we will call bushel, is equal to ten "tou" (peck), and the "tou" again is equal to ten "shêng", which we will call pint.
2. 擔  Tan.¹  A load, picul, to carry.
    斤  Chin.¹  A catty, one and a third lbs.
3. 稱  Ch’êng.¹  To weigh, call, style.
    稱一稱  Ch’êng-i-ch’êng. To weigh on the scales.
    裹  Kuo.³  To bind, wrap.
    包裹  Pao-kuo. A parcel.
5. 究竟  Chiu⁴-ching.⁴  Really.
    雲  Liang.³  Ounce, tael.
    錢  Ch’ien.²  Coin, mace, tenth of an ounce.
7. Chê ko k'ou tai li yu to shao liang shih.
7. How much grain is there in this sack?

8. Yu i tan, liu tou, ch'i shêng.
8. One "tan" six bushels and seven pints.

Tan, tou, shêng. It is difficult to give exact equivalents in English of these Chinese measures of capacity. But see note p. 140.

Measures of length in the shorter ranges are on the decimal system. The foot varies in length according to the material that is to be measured. There are ten inches to the foot, and ten feet make a "chang". The inch is divided into ten "fên". Other commonly used measures are the "pu", which is five feet, and the "li", about a third of the English mile, which consists of 180 "chang".

9. Tsai t'an i t'an ch'ih ts'un pa.
9. Let us further discuss measures of length.

10. Na tao jung i ming pai.
    Shih fên chiu shih i ts'un; shih ts'un chiu shih i ch'ih; shih ch'ih chiu shih i chang.
10. That is easy to understand. An inch has ten parts; a foot is ten inches, and a "chang" ten feet.

11. K'o shih yu ti shih hou, wo t'ing jên shuo, chi pu, chi pu. Chê shih shih mo i ssu.
11. But sometimes I hear people say, "so many 'pu', so many 'pu'". What does that mean?

12. Ah, yes. A "pu" is five feet.

13. Na mo, liang pu yeh shih i chang, shih pu shih.
13. In that case, two "pu" also make a "chang"?
7. 袋
   口袋
   糧
   糧食

Tai.¹ Bag, sack.
K’ou-tai. Bag, sack, pocket.
Liang.² Grain, food.
Liang-shih. Grain, food.

8. 斗
    石
    升

Tou.³ A peck.
Tan.¹ Bushel.
Shêng.¹ A pint.

9. 尺
    寸
    尺寸

Ch’ih.³ A foot.
Ts’un.⁴ An inch.
Ch’ih-ts’un. Measure of length, length.

10. 白
     明白
     丈

Pai.²⁴ White, clear, in vain.
Ming-pai. To comprehend, understand.
Chang.⁴ Ten feet, husband.

11. 步
     意
     意思
     意思

Pu.⁴ Pace, step, five feet.
I.⁴ Idea, intention, meaning, wish.
Ssu.¹ Think on, ponder, thought.
I-ssu. Meaning.
14. And you should also know that 180 "chang" make a "li".

15. Na mo, san li chiu shih ch’a pu to, ho i Ying li i yang yüan.
15. Then three Chinese "li" are about equal in length to an English mile?

"Ch’a pu to"—different not much. A very popular expression for "nearly", "about", etc.
"I yang yüan"—the same distance. "Yüan" is used in longer measurements of length.

16. Ch’a pu to.
16. Just about.

17. Tso i t’iao k’u tzu tê yung to shao ts’ai liao.
17. How much material is required to make a pair of trousers?

18. Na k’an ts’ai liao ti k’uan hsia.
18. That depends on the width of the material.

"Na k’an"—that depends (lit. that looks).

19. Pi fang shuo, ts’ai liao shih êrh ch’ih k’uan, yung to shao.
19. For example, say the material is two feet wide, how much would be needed?

"Pi fang shuo"—equal to our e.g., for illustration, etc.

20. Érh ch’ih k’uan ti ts’ai liao, tê yung i chang êrh ch’ih ti pu.
20. In material two feet wide, twelve feet will be needed.

21. I ko jên p’ao i hsiao shih (i tien chung), nêng p’ao to yüan.
21. How far can a man run in an hour?

"I hsiao shih"—an hour’s time, alternative for "i tien chung ti kung fu", "i ko chung t’ou".

22. Ch’üan shih chieh tsui k’uai ti chi lu, chiu shih shih ying li.
22. The world’s record is about ten miles.

"Chi lu"—record, adapted for the best achievement in any sphere.
17. 褲
K’u⁴ (tzu). Trousers.
一条裤子 I-t’iao-k’u-tzu. A pair of trousers.

18. 材料
Ts’ai.² Materials.
Liao.⁴ Materials, calculate, etc.
材料 Ts’ai-liao. Materials, material.
寬 K’uan.¹ Wide, broad, easy.
狭 Hsia.² Narrow.
寬狭 K’uan-hsia. Width.
比方 Pi-fang. For illustration, comparison, etc.

20. 布
Pu.⁴ Cloth, to spread.

21. 跑
P’ao.³ To run, to gallop.
一小時 I-hsiao-shih. An hour.

22. 世界
Shih.⁴ The world, a generation.
世界 Chieh.⁴ The world, boundary.
紀 Shih-chieh. The world.
年 Chi.⁴ To record, year.
p'o la chê ko chi lu, thinks of breaking
hên fei shih. that record has a

"P'o chi lu"—to break the record, also an adaptation from the
West.

24. Pu ts'o, pu ts'o. 24. Quite right.
22. 錄  
   紀録  
   Lu. To record, copy.  
   Chi-lu. Record.  
23. 破  
   P'0. Break, solve.
DIALOGUE No. 15
A talk with the Cook.

Mistress, M.  Cook, C.

1. M. Ming t’ien chung wu, wo yao ch’ing san ko k’o.
1. I am inviting three guests for to-morrow noon.

Notice again how expressions of time come early in the sentences.

2. C. T’ai-t’ai hsiangch’ih shih-mo fan.
2. What food would you like to eat?

“Hsiang” means “to think”, but the sense is as translated.

3. First prepare some assorted appetizers.

4. C. Yao jou t’ang pu yao.
4. Will you want soup?

5. Yes, we’ll have chicken soup.

6. C. T’ai-t’ai ch’ih shêm-mo jou. Hsien tsai yang jou kuei i tie’rh.
6. What meat would you like? Mutton is rather dear just now.

7. M. Chê chi t’ien t’ien ch’i jê, ch’ih liang ts’ai yeh hsing, pi ju huo t’ui, chi p’ien, niu shê t’ou têng têng.
7. It has been rather hot these days. Cold viands would be all right, like ham, chicken, tongue, etc.

“Têng têng”—sort-sort, equal to our et cetera.
“Shem mo ti” is another way of saying et cetera.
VOCABULARY OF DIALOGUE No. 15

3. 碟 Tieh.⁵ Saucer.
4. 肉 Jou.⁴ Ju.⁴ Meat.
    湯 T'ang.¹ Soup, gravy.
5. 雞 Chi.¹ Chicken.
    魚 Yü.³ Fish.
    猪 Chu.¹ Pig, pork.
    排 P'ai.² Chops.
    骨 Ku.³ Chops.
6. 羊 Yang.² Sheep.
    羊肉 Yang-jou. Mutton.
7. 熱 Jê.⁴ Hot.
    天 T'ien.¹ Heaven, used for weather with the
    天氣 next.
    氣 T'ien-ch'i. Weather.
    涼 Liang.² Cool, pleasant.
    火 Huo.² Fire.
    腿 T'ui.³ Leg, thigh, ham.
8. C. Tsai chia t’u tou, po ts’ai.
8. And potatoes, and spinach, etc.
There are many words for potatoes, such as “ti-tan”, “shan-yü”, “yü t’ou”.

9. But see that the vegetables are well cooked.

10. C. T’ai-t’ai yeh yao ch’ih t’ien ti ma.
10. Will you also be wanting a sweet?

11. Yes, prepare ice-cream and cake.

12. C. Yao nai-ping ho ping-kan pu yao.
12. Will you want cheese and biscuits?

13. M. Yao, mo-liao hai yao ho chia-fei.
13. Yes, and finally we shall want to drink coffee.
“Mo liao”—at the end—sometimes expanded, e.g., “mo mo liao erh ti”—finally.
7. 火腿 片 牛舌 牛舌頭
Huo-t’ui. Boiled ham.
P’ien. Sliced, a slice, a strip.
Niu. A cow.
Shê. Tongue.
Niu-shè-t’ou. The tongue of an ox, ox-tongue.

等等
Têng. Class, kind, etc.
Têng-têng. Et cetera.

8. 加再土豆 土豆菠菜
Chia. To add, to increase.
Tsai. Again, repeat.
T’u. Earth.
Tou. Beans.
T’u tou. Potatoes.
Po. Spinach.
Po-ts’ai. Spinach, etc.

9. 煮熟
Chu. To boil.
Shou. Ripe, soft, properly cooked.

11. 冰淇淋
Ping. Ice.
Ch’i-lin. Transliteration of English "jelly".
Ping-ch’i-lin. Ice-cream.

點心
Tien. Dot, etc., with next used for cakes, sweetmeats.

12. 奶饼 奶饼乾
Nai. Milk, curdled milk, cheese.
Ping. Cake, slab.
Nai-ping. Cheese.
Ping-kan. Biscuits (kan is dry). Kan is added to fruits when dried.

13. 末末了
Mo. The end, at the last.
Mo-liao. At the end, to finish with.

咖啡
Chia-fei. Transliteration for coffee.
14. C. T'ai-t'ai pu yao shui kuo ma.
15. M. Mai p'in kuo, li, p'u t'ao pa.
14. Won't you want fresh fruit?
15. Buy some apples, pears and grapes.

17. M. Huang chiu chiu hsing, yeh yao lü-sung yen.
16. Shall I put on wine?
17. Yellow wine will suffice, and put on some cigars.

"Lü-sung"—Luzon, the large southern island of the Philippines.

18. C. Yeh hsü yu i liang wei k'o jën shih chieh chiu ti, tsui hao hsien yü pei chi p'ing ch'i shui.
18. Perhaps one or two of the guests may be teetotal; we had better prepare some minerals (soft drinks).

"Chieh chiu"—abstain from wine.

19. M. Pu ts'o.
20. C. Pai cho tzu tê chao i ko pang mang ti.
21. M. Ni k'o i chao lao ma, tao ch'u fang pang mang hao la.
22. M. Ling wai yü pei shui yen tai, yeh hsü yu jen hsiang ch'ou shui yen.
19. All right.
20. I suppose I had better get a man to help with the table.
21. You can tell the amah to help in the kitchen.
22. And, in addition, prepare a water pipe, as probably someone will want to smoke.
14. 果 Kuo.³ Fruit in general.  
水果 Shui kuo. Fresh fruit.  

15. 遠 P'ing.² P'ing.² Apple.  
梨 Li.² Pears.  
葡萄 P'u-t'ao.² Grapes. Cf. Greek, Putos, the vine.  

16. 酒 Chiu.³ Wine.  
17. 黃 Huang.³ Yellow.  
呂宋 Lü-sung. Luzon, Philippines.  

18. 戒 Chieh.⁴ Forbid, prohibit.  
瓶 P'ing.² A bottle.  
汽水 Ch'i-shui. Aerated waters.  
擺 Pai.³ To spread, to lay on table.  


22. 另外 Ling.⁴ Separate.  
外 Wai.⁴ Outside, additional.  
另外 Ling-wai. In addition.  
袋 Tai.⁴ Pipe, bag.  
抽 Ch’ou.¹ To smoke, draw.
23. C. Cho tzu shang yeh yao pai t'ang, niu nai, yen, hu chiao mien, ts’u, chiang yu, ho chieh mo pa.

The "pa" at the end of the sentence carries the sense of "I suppose". This is a common idiom.

24. M. Ya ch’ien yeh pu yao wang la.

23. And (I suppose) I should put sugar and milk, salt, pepper, vinegar, sauce, and mustard on the table?

24. And the tooth-picks must not be forgotten.
23. 糖 T'ang.² Sugar.
    奶 Nai.³ Milk, breasts.
    鹽 Yen.² Salt.
    胡椒 Hu.² Pepper.
    胡椒麴 Chiao.¹ Pepper.
    醋 Ts'u.⁴ Vinegar.
    醬油 Chiang-yu. Sauce.
    芥 Chieh.⁴ Mustard.
    芥末 Chieh-mo.⁴ Mustard.

24. 牙 Yā.² Tooth, teeth.
    籤 Ch'ien.¹ Bamboo-slip.
    牙籤 Ya-ch'ien.² Tooth-pick.
DIALOGUE No. 16

Hiring a Rickshaw

Mistress, M. Servant, S.

1. M. Chieh shang yu yang chê (huang pao chê) mei yu.

“Yang chê” — foreign cart, rickshaw, also called “jên li chê” — equal to jinrickshaw. In the north, Peking and Tientsin, etc., “chiao pî” is a favourite term. It simply means “rubber”, referring to the tyres. Another alternative is “huang pao chê”, referring to the yellow covering of many rickshaws.

2. S. Yu shih yu, pu kuo pu hên to.

Note the phrase “yu shih yu”— have yes have! — the implication being that there are not many.

3. M. Ni kan k’uai ch’ü, kei wo ku i liang.

“Liang” is the classifier of carts. It may be used by itself when the subject, cart, etc., is obvious.

4. S. T’ai t’ai shang na li ch’ü.

5. M. Wo yao shang Li t’ai t’ai na li ch’ü.

6. S. T’ai t’ai yao ku lai hui chê ma.

7. M. Ku yang chê, shih lun li shu, hai shih lun chung tien ni.

“Li shu” — miles, number, distance.
VOCABULARY OF DIALOGUE No. 16

1. 洋車  Yang. Foreign.
    洋車  Yang-ch'ê. Rickshaw.

    趕快  Kan-k’uai. Speedily, hasten.


7. 論數  Lun. To discuss, according to.
    論數  Li-shu. Distance.
    鐘點  Chung tien. Hours—time.
8. S. To pan shih lun chung tien. "To pan" or "to-i-pan"—more than a half, mostly, probably.

9. M. Na mo, tsui hao ku t'a san ko chung t'ou.

10. S. T'ai t'ai yao wo ho t'a chiang chia ch'ien ma.

11. M. I ko chung t'ou, ying kai kei t'a to shao ch'ien.

12. S. Wo shuo pu chun. I ko chung t'ou, ta kai kai kei t'a wu mao ch'ien.

"Ta kai"—big, ought, so probably.

13. M. Wo i wei wu mao ch'ien t'ai to la i tie'rh. Ni ho t'a chiang chia ti shih hou, tsui hao hsien shao kei t'a i tie'rh.

"Wo i wei"—I think, often "I wo k'an lai"—literally "In my seeing come", in my opinion.

14. S. Na pu yung shuo. Wo men tso mai mai, chiu shih che yang.

15. M. K'o shih wo t'ing shuo, Chung Kuo shang chieh, hsien tsai, tou shih "yen pu êrh chia".

8. Mostly by the hour.

9. Then it will be best to hire him for three hours.

10. Do you want me to discuss the price with him? (the rickshaw coolie).

11. How much ought one to give per hour?

12. I can't say for certain, but probably one ought to give him fifty cents.

13. In my opinion, fifty cents is a trifle too much. When you discuss the price with him, it will be best to offer him less at first.

14. Needless to say we do business just along those lines.

15. But I have heard that in Chinese commercial circles now, the prices are fixed (lit. words have not two prices).
8. 多半 To pan. Probably (lit. more a half).

10. 講 Chiang.¹ To expound, explain, discuss, bargain.
    價 Chia.² Price, value.
    價 錢 Chia-ch’ien. Price.
11. 應 Ting.¹ Ought.
    該 Kai.² Ought, should.
12. 準 Chun.³ Standard, certainty, fixed.
    說不準 Shuo-pu-chun. Can’t say for certain.

15. 商 Shang.¹ Commerce.
    界 Chieh.² World, sphere.
    商界 Shang-chieh. The commercial world.
    言 Yen.² Words, speech.
16. S. Ta shang tien to pan tou shih ting chia, k’o shih hsiao mai mai, hai shih chao chiu chiang chia.

"Chao chiu"—according to old (practice).

17. M. Na mo, ni k’uai i tie’rh ch’ü, chia ch’ien yüeh shao yüeh hao.

"Yüeh . . . yüeh"—a very common idiom, e.g., "yüeh k’uai yüeh hao", the quicker the better.

18. S. Na pu yung shuo, wo chin li chiu shih la.

19. M. Yeh pu yao tan wu kung fu, k’uai k’uai ti hui lai pa.


Note construction of second half of this sentence.

16. The big stores all have fixed prices, but small shopkeepers still bargain in the old way.
16. 照
照舊
Chao.¹ According to.
Chao-chiu.⁴ As of old, as formerly.

17. 越
Yüeh.⁴ ⁵ The more, comparative sign.

19. 能
耽誤
耽誤
Tan.¹ Obstruct, prevent, delay.
Wu.⁴ Forget, careless, miss.
Tan-wu. Delay, waste time, loiter.

20. 能
Nêng.² Can, able.
DIALOGUE No. 17

An interesting discussion between two friends on an intimate personal matter.

1. A. Chao hsiao chieh ni 1. Do you know Miss jen te pu jen te. Chao?
   "Jen-te" and "jen-shih" are synonymous—both may be applied to persons.

2. B. Jen shih jen te, k'o shih pu ta shu shih. 2. I may be said to know her, but I am not at all intimate with her.

3. A. T'a to ta sui shu, ni chih tao pu chih tao. 3. Do you know how old she is?
   "Chih tao" cannot be used in reference to knowing persons.

4. B. Pu chih tao, wo ts'ai t'a shih shih liu sui shang hsia. 4. I don’t really know, but I guess she is about sixteen.
   "Shang-hsia"—up-down, whereabouts, roughly speaking.

5. A. T'a ti fu mu tou tsai shih ma. 5. Are both her parents living?

6. B. T'a fu ch'in hai tsai, pu kuo mu ch'in tsao ch'ü shih la. 6. Her father is still alive, but her mother died some time ago.
   "Tsai" used alone in this connection means "alive".
   "Ch'ü shih"—left the world, died.

7. A. T'a tsao chi nien 7. Do you remember how many years ago she died?
   ch'ü ti shih, ni chi te pu chi te.
   "Ch'ü ti shih"—an adjectival phrase=one’s leaving the earth. An alternative is "ch'ü shih la", verbal form in past tense.
VOCABULARY OF DIALOGUE No. 17

1. 趙 Chao.4 A common surname.
   小姐 Hsiao chieh. Miss, a single woman.
   認 Jên.4 Recognise, know (of persons).
   認得 Jên-tê. To know, mainly persons.

2. 認識 Jên-shih. To know, to recognise, an alternative for jên-tê.
   識 Shih.4 To know, recognise.
   熟 Shu.2 Intimate, very friendly.
   熟識 Shu-shih. Very intimate acquaintance.

3. 知道 Chih-tao. To know, of things and affairs.

4. 猜 Ts’ai.1 To guess.
   上下 Shang-hsia. Round about, roughly speaking.

5. 世 Shih.4 The earth.
   在世 Tsai-shih. On the earth, alive, living.

6. 去世 Ch’ü-shih. To have left the earth, dead, to die.

7. 記 Chi.4 To remember, bear in mind.
   記得 Chi-tê. To remember.
8. B. Pu ta ch’ing ch’u, wo hsiang t’a shih wu liu ni ch’ien, ch’ü ti shih.
You may also say "chi pu ta ch’ing ch’u". Note that if an adverbial phrase qualifies the verb only the main part of a composite verb is used: "chi’—not 'chi tê' pu ta ch’ing ch’u".

9. A. Na mo, Chao hsiao chieh shih k’o lien ti.
9. Then Miss Chao is to be pitied.

10. B. Shih tsai k’o lien.
10. Truly pitiable.

11. A. T’a chia li i kung chi ko jên.
11. How many are there in her family?

12. B. T’ung kung pa ko jên.
12. Eight altogether.

13. How many brothers has she?
There is no possessive "t’i" after "t’a", as it is clear from the sense.

14. B. San ko ti hsiung, san ko tzu mei.
14. Three brothers and three sisters.

15. A. Chao hsiao chieh shih hang chi.
15. What is her place (where does she come) in the family?
"Hang chi"—place on a list—the common way of inquiring about one's place in the family.

16. She comes second. She has one elder brother, two younger brothers, and two younger sisters.
8. 清 Ch’ing.¹ Clear, pure.
    清楚 Ch’ing-ch’u. Clear, intelligent.
    前 Ch’ien.² Before, age, formerly.

9. 憐 Lien.² Pitiful, pity, sympathise.
    可憐 K’o-lien. Pitiable, to be pitied.

12. 通 T’ung.¹ Together with, altogether.
    共 Kung.⁴ All, together.
    通共 T’ung-kung. Taken together, altogether.

13. 弟 Ti.⁴ Younger brother.
    兄 Hsiung.¹ Elder brother.
    弟兄 Ti-hsiung. Brothers.
    位 Wei.⁴ Classifier of persons, especially those of rank or position. Also a person of that kind.

14. 姊 Tzu.² Elder sister.
    妹 Mei.⁴ Younger sister.
    姊妹 Tzu-mei. Sisters.

15. 行 Hang.² Grade, place in a list, position, order.
    行第 Hang-chi. An inquiry as to one’s place in the family.

16. 哥 Ko.¹ Elder brother.
    哥哥 Ko-ko. Elder brother.
    兄弟 Hsiung-ti.⁴ Younger brother.
    妹妹 Mei-mei.⁴ Younger sister.
17. A. Na mo, chao ni ti hua, t'a yeh mei yu chieh chieh, yeh mei yu mu ch'ın.

17. Then, according to your statement, she has neither elder sisters nor mother.

18. B. Pu ts'o. T'a tsao chiu tan fu chia li pie'rh ti tsê-jên, yeh hên tung chia shih.

18. That is so. Early on she had to assume domestic responsibilities, and she is very conversant with matters of the home.

"Tan fu . . . tsê-jên"—carry responsibility, the details of the responsibility coming in between the verb and the noun.

19. A. Chao hsiao chieh kên jên ting la hun mei yu.

19. Is Miss Chao engaged?

"Kên" is a colloquial alternative for "ho"—with.

20. B. Pu chih tao, wo k'o i kei ni ta t'ing.

20. I don't know, but I will inquire for you.

21. A. Wo hên hsi huan t'o ni t'i wo pan chê chien shih.

21. I am very happy to entrust you to manage this affair for me.

22. B. P'an wang wo nêng pan ti t'o tang, pu kei ni tiu lien chiu shih la.

22. I hope I shall be able to put it through satisfactorily, without causing you to lose face.

23. A. Tsa mên lia shih lao p'êng yu, ni yeh hên tung li mao, wo k'an ni pu hui chiao wo tiu lien ti.

23. We two are old friends, and you understand etiquette thoroughly. I think it impossible for you to let me down (lit. cause me to lose face).

18. 擔負責任 Tan fu.⁴ To bear, carry, as responsibility. Tsê.² Chai.² Burden of office, responsibility. Jen.⁴ Office, the care and burden of office. 擔負責任 Tan-fu-chai-jên. To carry responsibility.

19. 訂婚 Ting⁴ hun. To become engaged to be married, fix, settle.

20. 打聽 Ta-t'ing. To make inquiries.

21. 托 T'o.⁴ Commission, to entrust to (pretext).


24. **B.** Ch'i kan, ch'i kan.  
K'o shih t'a ch'in  
ch'i pu shao, pu  
tê tsui i liang ko  
jên, shih pu yung  
i na.

24. I am honoured (lit. how  
dare I accept such  
compliments). But  
her relations are  
numerous, and it will  
not be easy to avoid  
giving offence to one  
or two of them.

25. **A.** Wu lun ju ho, ni pu  
yao shuo k'uang.  
Yao shih ni p'êng  
chien shih mo nan  
ch'u, k'ung p'a  
kuo pu chü ti  
shih hou, ni hui  
la, hsiang hsiang  
hsi hsi ti kao su  
wo, chiu tê la.

25. But whatever happens  
you must not tell any  
untruths. If you  
meet with difficulties  
which cannot be sur-  
mounted, come and  
inform me as to the  
details, and leave it  
at that.

26. **B.** Ni na yang ti ch'ú  
chu i, wo hen  
p'ei fu, wo pu hui  
tui ni shih hsin  
ti.

26. I admire you for voicing  
your opinion in that  
way. (Have no fear)  
I will not break faith  
with you.

27. **A.** Hao, shih ch'ing  
pan ch'êng la, wo  
chiu hao hao êrh  
ti ch'ou hsieh ni.

27. Good. When the affair  
is completed, I shall  
gratefully reward  
you.
24. 豈 Ch’i.³ How, how can it be? with the next a common term of polite usage.
            Kan.³ Dare.
            Ch’i.⁴ Relatives.
            Ch’in-ch’i. Relatives.
            Tsui.⁴ Sin, crime, offence, offend.
            Tê-tsui. To offend a person.

25. 論 Lun.⁴ To discuss.
            Wu⁵-lun.⁴ No matter, however that may be.
            Ho.² How, why.
            K’uang.³ Lies, false.
            P’êng.⁴ To meet with, come across, hit upon.
            P’êng-chien. To meet with, come across, hit upon.
            Nan-ch’u. Difficulties.
            Hsiang.² Details.
            Hsi.⁴ Fine, delicate.
            Hsiang-hsi. Details, in detail.

26. 主 Chu.³ Opinion, lord, master.
            Chu-i. Opinion.
            P’ei.⁴ Wear at waist, respect.
            Fu.² Submit, serve, show deference.
            P’ei-fu. Respect, admire.
            Shih.¹ To lose, to err.
            Shih-hsin.⁴ Be unfaithful, break faith.

27. 成 Ch’êng.² To complete, finish, become.
            Ch’ou.² Reward, bestow.
            Hsieh.⁴ To confer, make a gift.

28. Say nothing about that. I am simply doing my best to help a friend in an emergency.
28. 提 T'i,² To mention.
DIALOGUE No. 18

Between two friends, illustrating expressions of Comparison, and other common idioms.

1. A. Chê ko tung-hsi hao. This is a good article.
2. B. Tan shih chê-ko pi na-ko hao. But this is better than that.
   "Pi" is compare—lit. "this compare that good" (see 10 below).
3. A. So i wo-mên shuo chê-ko kêng hao. So we say "this is better".
4. B. Chû wo k'an chê shih tsui hao ti tung-hsi. I consider this is a very fine article.
   "Chû wo k'an"—lit. "according to my seeing".
5. A. Yeh k'o i shuo shih ting (t'îng) hao. You may also say it is "the best".

6. B. Chê ko pu pu hao, k'o shih ho na ko i pan hao. This cloth is inferior, but it is as good as that.
7. A. Chê yang ti pu, pu ju na ko hao. This kind of cloth is not as good as that.
   "Pu ju na ko hao"—lit. "not as that good".
8. B. Yeh k'o i shuo chê ko kêng pu hao. It is also possible to say, "this is even worse".
9. A. Hai yu i ko shuo fa, chiu shih chê ko pi na ko huai (tai). There is another way of speaking, i.e., this is worse than that.
10. B. K'o shih t'ou i ko shuo fa pi ti êrh ko shuo fa ch'iang. But the first way of saying it is superior to the second.
   "T'ou-i-ko" and "ti-i-ko" are synonymous.
VOCABULARY OF DIALOGUE No. 18

2. 比 Pi.\(^3\)\(^4\) To compare, illustrate.

4. 據 Chü.\(^4\) According to.
   最 Tsui.\(^4\) Most, very, sign of superlative.

5. 頂 Ting.\(^3\) Top, head, sign of superlative.
   挺 T’ing.\(^3\) To stick out, stiff.

6. 布 Pu.\(^4\) Cloth.

9. 壞 Huai.\(^4\) Bad, vicious, ruined.

10. 強 Ch’iang.\(^2\) Strong, so superior, violent.
11. A. Na chê i k'uai pu ho na i k'uai pi i pi.

"Pi-i-pi"—compare a compare, make a comparison—a common verbal form.

11. Compare these two pieces of cloth.

12. B. Yao chiao wo pi i pi na i fang mien ni.

"Na i fang mien"—"na" is third tone representing the question—which?

12. In what respect do you want me to compare them?

13. A. Hsien pi i pi ch'ang tuan, tsai pa pu ti hao tai pi i pi, tsai pi i pi yen shai, tiao shai pu tiao shai.

First compare them as to length, then as to quality, and then again as to colour, especially as to the dye being fast or not.

Note this interesting way of forming abstract nouns—long-short equals length; good-bad equals quality.

"Shai"—colour; also pronounced "sè" or "sei". "Tiao shai"—to lose colour.

13. Hsien pi i pi ch'ang tuan, tsai pa pu ti hao tai pi i pi, tsai pi i pi yen shai, tiao shai pu tiao shai.

14. B. Chê ko pu t'ai kuei, wo mai pu ch'i.

"Mai pu ch'i"—buy not rise—just as we say can't rise to it, can't afford.

14. I can't afford to buy this cloth, it is too dear.

15. A. Chê ko hsiang tzu t'ai chung, wo no pu tung.

"No pu tung"—move not move, can't move it.

15. This box is too heavy, I can't move it.

16. B. Chiu shih wo-mên liang hsiang t'ai, yeh t'ai pu tung.

"T'ai pu tung"—carry not move, can't carry it.

The positive of all these expressions is to add "'la" to the composite verb: "mai ch'i la"—can afford; "no tung la"—can move it, etc.
12. 面 \hspace{0.5cm} 12. 面
方面  
Mien.\(^4\)  Face, aspect.
Fang-mien. A certain aspect of any matter, one side.

13. 長 \hspace{0.5cm} 13. 長
短  
Ch’ang.\(^2\)  Long.
Tuan.\(^3\)  Short.

長短 \hspace{0.5cm} 長短
Ch’ang-tuan. Length.

歹 \hspace{0.5cm} 歹
Tai.\(^3\)  Bad.

好歹 \hspace{0.5cm} 好歹
Hao-tai. Quality.

顔 \hspace{0.5cm} 顔
Yen.\(^2\)  Colour, face.

色 \hspace{0.5cm} 色
Shai. Sè.\(^4\)  Colour, beauty.

掉 \hspace{0.5cm} 掉
Tiao.\(^4\)  Drop, fall, lose.

15. 動 \hspace{0.5cm} 15. 動
Tung.\(^4\)  Move, stir.
17. A. Chê li yu kên kun tszu, pu kuo shih t'ai ts'u, wo-mên na pu chu.

"Ts'u"—thick; of round long things. "Hou" is the word for thick when applied to flat things.

18. B. Wo-mên mai tittung-hsi t'ai to, i ko hsiao chê chuang pu hsia.

"Chuang pu hsia"—pack not down, can't get them on.

18. We have bought too many things, one barrow cannot take them all.

19. A. Huo wu shih tsai t'ai to, liang ko ma chê yeh la pu tung.

"La pu tung"—pull not move, can't pull them.

19. We really have too many things, even two carts couldn't pull them.

20. B. Wo-mên hui tao chia ti shih-hou, k'ung p'a i ko wu li, yeh fang pu hsia chê hsieh tung hsi.

"Yeh"—still. "Even the whole room, is still insufficient."

20. When we get home I fear that one room will be too small to take all these things.

21. A. Pa t'a mên tui ch'i lai yeh hsü chiu chuang tê hsia la.

"Chuang tê l.sia". Note this alternative to what has been suggested in 16 above, to express the positive.

21. If we pile them up we can probably get them all in.

22. B. K'o shih tê hsiao hsin, pa tung-hsi tui ch'i t'ai kao, k'ung p'a kou pu chao.

22. But take care. If you put things too high, I fear you might not be able to reach them.
17. 根 Kên.¹ Classifier of sticks.
棍 Kun.⁴ Staff, stick.
挪 No.² To move.
粗 Tsʻu.¹ Broad, thick (of round things like columns).

18. 小車 Hsiao³-chʻe. Wheelbarrow.
裝 Chuang.¹ To pack, lead into, dress.

物 Wu.¹ Things, goods.
馬 Ma.³ Horse.
拉 La.¹ To pull, drag.

20. 屋 Wu.¹ Room in a house, house.

21. 堆 Tui.¹ Heap, pile, to pile up.

22. 高 Kao.¹ High, eminent.
夠 Kou.⁴ To reach to a height, put a thing high up.
够不着 Kou pu chao. I can’t reach up to it.
23. A. Pu kuo chan ts'ai i t'zuo shang, huo shih hsiao t'ai tzu shang, chiu kou chao la.

"Huo shih"—or.

24. B. Yu t'ai tzu chê mo kao yeh chiu hsing.

"Chê mo kao"—as high as this, a very common idiom.

25. A. K'o shih yeh tê k'an t'ai tzu ti k'uan hsia tsên yang.

"K'uan chai" is a common alternative to the text.

26. B. Yao shih ni pi wo hsien tao chia, k'o i ho yung jen shang liang, tsèm-mo pan tsèm-mo hao.

"Tsèm-mo . . . tsèm-mo"—"however . . . thus".

27. A. Yao shih wo pi ni wan tao tsên yang ni.

27. If I arrive later than you what then?

28. B. Yao shih wo pi ni hsien tao chia, pi shih yin wei ni tsou ts'o la lu.

28. If I get there before you it must be because you have taken the wrong road.

29. A. Na mo, shui hsien tao, shui pan chiu shih la.

"Shui . . . shui"—"whoever . . . he".
23. 站  Chan.⁴ To stand, stand up, a post (on a journey).
或  Huo.⁴ Or, perhaps, someone.
台  T’ai.² Terrace, platform.
台子  T’ai-tzu. Steps.

25. 寬  K’uan.¹ Wide.
狭  Hsia.²⁻¹ Narrow (unusual).
寛狭  K’uan-hsia. Width.
商  Shang.¹ Discuss, deliberate, consult.

26. 量  Liang.² Measure, plan, to consider (with the preceding).

28. 路  Lu.⁴ Road, way.
DIALOGUE No. 19

Shopping at the Drapery Store

Shopkeeper, S. Customer, C.

1. C. Chang kuei ti, kung hsi fa ts’ai. 1. Good-day manager. I hope business is brisk and returns good.

"Kung hsi"—a common congratulatory expression conveying "good wishes".
"Fa ts’ai"—get rich, special greeting to merchants, etc.

2. S. T’o fu. Mei yu shêm-mo shêng-i. 2. Thanks to you. But business is practically nil.

3. C. Wo yao mai ch’ou tzu, yu mei yu. 3. I am wanting silk. Have you any?

4. S. Yu. Hsien shêng yao shêm-mo yang’erh ti ch’ou tzu. Yao hao ti, hai shih yao tz’u i tie’rh ti ni. 4. Yes. What kind of silk do you want? Do you want good quality or something not quite so good?

"Tz’u"—something not of the first grade.

5. C. Yao hao ti. Ch’ou tzu shih tsên yang mai ti, shih lun ch’ih, hai shih lun chin. 5. I want good quality. How do you sell silk, by the foot or by the pound?

"Lun"—to discuss, how things are sold.
VOCABULARY OF DIALOGUE No. 19

1. 掌 
   Chang.¹ To control, palm of hand.
   櫃 
   Kuei.² Shop-counter, cupboard.
   掌櫵的 
   Chang-kuei-ti. The shop manager.
   欽 
   Kung.¹ Respectful feeling, reverence, offer.
   喜 
   Hsi.³ Joy, felicity.
   恭喜 
   Kung-hsi. To wish you joy, happiness, etc.
   財 
   Ts'ai.² Wealth, riches.
   發財 
   Fa-ts'ai. To get rich.

2. 福 
   Fu.² Happiness, well-being.
   托福 
   T'o-fu. Dependent upon you for my well-being.
   生 
   Shêng.¹ Produce, life, living, a living.
   意 
   I.⁴ Idea, wish, intention.
   生意 

3. 綢 
   Ch'ou.² Manufactured silk.

4. 次 
   Tz'u.⁴ Inferior, second-rate, etc., next.

5. 尺 
   Ch'i-h.³ A foot of linear measure.
6. Silk is sold by the foot, tea by the pound and envelopes by the piece.

7. Thank you for your information. Let me see a few samples of silk.

8. This is excellent silk, the material is durable and of fast dye.

"Shai"—colour, also pronounced "sè" or "sei".

9. How much is it a foot?

10. Seventy cents a foot.

11. But that is a trifle dear. Have you anything a little cheaper?

"Wei mien shao wei ", bookish rather, unavoidably a little, a courteous phrase designed to save the vendor's face.

12. "I fèn chia ch'ien i fèn huo"—one of China's innumerable proverbs; a chapter of the popular ones follows (see Dialogue 38).
6. 茶
   Ch’ā.² Tea.
   Hsin.⁴ Letter, news, faith, believe.
   Fèng.¹ Classifier of letters, cover, seal, envelope.
   Hsin-fēng. Envelope.
   Ko.⁴ Each, every, individual.
   Ling.³ Receive, lead.
   Chiao.¹ Instruction, teaching, to teach.

7. 領
   Ts’ai.² Materials, material (cloth, silk, etc.).
   Liao.⁴ Materials.
   Nai.⁴ Endure, bear.
   Chiu.³ Old, long time.
   Nai-chiu. Durable.

11. 未
    Wei.⁴ Not yet.
    Mien.³ Avoid, remit, avoidable.
    Shao.² Somewhat, slight.
    Wei.¹ Small, minute, slight.
    P’ien.² Cheap.
    I.² Right, suits, fits.
    P’ien-i. Cheap, reasonable of price, advantageous to buyer.

12. 別
    Pieh.² Do not, probably short for “pu yao”.

13. **C. Wo sui shih she pu**

	tê hua na mo to
ti ch’ien, pu kuo
chê ko ch’ou tzu
ti ts’ai liao, ken
yen shai tou hên
hao, kei wo liang
i chang wu pa.

"Shê pu tê"—let go cannot get, can’t spend (that much).

Liang”—to measure, used of purchasing lengths of cloth, etc.

"Wu" is five and refers to "feet"; "ch’ang"—ten feet; "ch’ih"
—foot; "ts’un"—inch.

14. **S. Ts’ai fêng tso hao**

	la, t’ai t’ai ch’uan
shang shen, i ting
shih hèn hao k’an
ti.

"Ts’ai fang"—cutting out shop—tailor—is sometimes used for
"ts’ai fêng", "fêng" being "to sew".

15. **C. Kuei shang yu to**

	shao jên.

"Kuei shang"—lit. "on the counter", but meaning is "in your
store".

16. **S. Yu êrh shih to, tou**

	shih lan ti.

17. **S. (to assistant). Na**

	ch’ih lai, liang i
liang chê ko ch’ou
tzu.

18. **C. Ni yu mei yu tso**

	wên chang ti ts’ai
liao.

19. **S. Yu na, shang, chung, hsia, san**


têng tou yu. T’ai
	t’ai hsi huan na
	i chung ni.

18. **Have you any material**

	suitable for mosquito
curtains?

19. **Yes, we have three**


grades, top, medium
and lower. Which
kind would you like
to see?
13. 捨
Shê.³ Let go, relinquish.
捨不得 Shê-pu-tê. Can't afford, etc., unwilling to part with.
花
Hua.¹ To spend, flower.
丈
Chang.⁴ Measure of length, distance, etc., equal to ten English feet.
量
Liang.² To measure, consider.
雖
Sui.² Although.

14. 裁
Ts’ai.² To cut, to cut out, plan.
裁縫
Ts’ai-fêng. The tailor.
穿
Ch’uan.¹ To wear, put on.

16. 懶
Lan.³ Lazy, slack.

18. 蚊
Wên.² Mosquito.
帳
Chang.⁴ Curtain, net for bed.
蚊帳
Wên-chang. Mosquito-net.
20. C. K’an k’an chung têng ti pa. Chê ko ts’ai liao yeh k’o i tso liên tzu ma. 20. I will look at the medium grade. Is this material suitable for curtains?

21. S. Fên liang ch’ing la i tie’rh. Tsai chung i tie’rh ti ts’ai liao hao. 21. The material is a little light for that. A little heavier material would be advisable (good).

22. C. Wo hai yao chi chang nai shih i tie’rh ti, tso p’u kai. 22. I also want several yards of somewhat stronger (cloth) to make bedding.

"P’u kai"—spread, cover, so bedding.

23. S. Na tao hao pan. Wo-mên yeh yu hên chieh shih ti pu, tso ju tzu hên ho shih. 23. That we can easily manage. We also have some very strong cloth which is suitable for mattresses.

24. C. Chiao wo k’an k’an pa. K’o shih ni mên k’uai yao kuan tien mên, pu shih ma. 24. Let me see it. But you will be closing shortly won’t you?

25. S. Na mei kuan hsi. Kuan la tien mên, hai té ch’ing suan tang t’ien ti chang. 25. That doesn’t matter. When the shop is closed, we have still the day’s accounts to do.

"Ch’ing suan"—clearly reckon. "Tang t’ien"—that particular day, the same day. Note this special use of "tang".
20. 麗
Lien-²(tzu). Curtain.

21. 分量
輕
Fên-liang. Weight.
Ch'ing.¹ Light.

22. 鋪
蓋
鋪蓋
P'u.¹ To spread.
Kai.⁴ To cover, build.
P'u-kai. Bedding (lit. cover and spread)

23. 結
實
縈
Chieh.² Solid, strong, reliable, real.
Shih.² Solid, strong, reliable, real.
Ju.⁴ Mattress.

25. 關係
關係
賬
Kuan.¹ Concern, involve.
Hsi.⁴ Connected with, concern, involve.
Kuan-hsi. Concern.
Chang.⁴ Account, bill.
DIALOGUE No. 20

Shopping at the Shoe Shop

Shopkeeper, S.  Customer, C.

1. C. Yao i shuang hsieh.  1. I want a pair of shoes.
    "I shuang"—a pair, also "i tui".

2. S. Ch'ing tso. Yao ti  2. Please take a seat. What size do you
    shih chi hao. want?

3. C. Ta kai shih pa hao.  3. Probably size eight.

4. S. Hsien shêng yao p'i  4. Do you want leather or
    hsieh, hai shih pu cloth shoes?
    hsieh ni.

5. C. Yao p'i hsieh. Ch'un  5. I want leather shoes.
    uan pu hsieh pu  Cloth shoes don't resist mud and water
    nêng tang ni shui. (so well).

    tsai chia li hsien shoes are very com-
    cho, ch'uan pufortable when you
    hsieh shih hên are at leisure at
    shu fu ti. home.

    "Hsien cho"—the "cho" is a participle, indicating continuation
    of the action "while you are at leisure", "resting".

7. C. Hsien pa p'i hsieh  7. Bring (some) leather
    na lai, shih i shih shoes first, for me to
    pa. try on.

8. S. Chê i shuang, wo  8. I should think this pair
    k'an ta hsiao ho is right for size.
    shih.

    "Ta-hsiao"—big-small, so "size", another illustration of the way
    abstract nouns are formed.

9. C. T'ai chin. Tsai  9. This is too tight. Let
    shih i shuang ta me try a little larger
    i tie'rh ti. pair.
1. 鞋 Shuang.\(^1\) A pair, double, both.  
   Hsieh.\(^2\) Shoes, slippers.

2. 號 Hao.\(^4\) Mark, sign.

4. 皮 P'i.\(^2\) Leather, skin.

5. 泥 Ní.\(^2\) Mud, slush.  
   閒 Hsien.\(^2\) At ease, leisure.  
   擋 Tang.\(^3\) To resist.

6. 舒服 Shu.\(^1\) Comfortable, at ease.  
   Fu.\(^2\) Accord with.  
   舒服 Shu-fu. At one's ease, comfortable.

8. 大小 Ta-hsiao. Size.

9. 緊 Chin.\(^3\) Tight, restricted, important.

“Chêng ho shih”—just according to style.

11. C. Shu fu. Wo chiu na chê i shuang. Tsai na’erh k’o i mai ling tzu, ling tai ho mao tzu.

11. Yes, comfortable. I will take this pair. Where can one buy collars, ties and hats?


12. Across the way, at the Hsing Lung Chi store.

13. C. Ni nêng kou pa chê shuang hsieh, sung tao wo ti chia li ch’ü ma.

13. Can you send the shoes to my home?


14. Certainly, what is your address?

“Fu shang”—a polite term for “residence”.

15. C. Shang Ma Chieh, ssu shih liu hao.

15. No. 46 Shang Ma Chieh.

16. S. Na pu yüan. Wo chiu ta fa i ko huo chi, kei hsien shêng sung ch’ü.

16. That is not far. I will send one of the assistants with them.

“Ta fa”—used of sending persons. “Fa” alone used of sending things. “Sung” means to escort a person or send things for a person.

17. C. Chiao t’a tso yang chê, wo kei t’a k’ai chê fei.

17. Tell him to take a rickshaw. I will give him his expenses.

“Chê fei”—used of travelling expenses when a conveyance is used.
10. 正  Chêng.\(^4\) Just, exactly, correct.

11. 領  Ling.\(^3\) Collar.
    帶  Tai.\(^4\) Girdle, belt, tie, tape.
    帽  Mao.\(^4\) Hat, cap.

12. 興  Hsing.\(^1\) Rise, prosper.
    隆  Lung.\(^2\) Eminent, abundant.
    記  Chi.\(^4\) Sign, record.

16. 遠  Yüan.\(^3\) Distant.
    打  Ta.\(^3\) An auxiliary verb denoting action.
    發  Fa.\(^1\) To send, transmit.
    打發  Ta-fa. To send a man.
    夥  Huo.\(^3\) Assistant, band, company.
    計  Chi.\(^4\) To reckon, calculate.
    夥計  Huo-chi. Shop assistant, apprentice.

17. 費  Fei.\(^4\) Expenses, what is spent.
    車費  Ch'ê-fei. Travelling expenses (lit. cart expense).
18. S. Pu pi. Kei t’ā chi ko chiu ch’ien chiu tê la.

18. There is no necessity to do that. Give him a little wine money (tip), that will be all right.

"Chiù ch’ien "—wine money, tip. The more scrupulous use " ch’a shui ch’ien "—tea-water money.
18. 必  Pi.⁴  Necessary, must.
酒 錢  Chiu-ch’ien. Wine money, a pourboire, tip.
DIALOGUE No. 21

Domestic Conversation on Lighting, Heating, etc.

Master, M. Servant, S.

1. M. Ni k’an i k’an chê ko ti t’an, kan ching pu kan ching.
1. Look at this carpet, is it clean?

2. S. Chê wu tzu t’ai an, wo k’an pu ta ch’ing ch’u.
2. This room is too dark, I can’t see very clearly.

Note that “pu”, the negative, follows the main verb when qualified by an adverb.

3. M. Pa têng tien shang, chiu k’an tê ch’ing ch’u la.
3. Light the lamp, and then you will be able to see clearly.

4. There is no oil in this lamp, it can’t give much light.

5. M. Chia li mei yu an tien têng, shih tsai k’o hsi.
5. What a pity we haven’t fitted electric light in the house.

6. S. Pu yao chin. Wo chiu tien i chih la chu.
6. Never mind, I will light a candle.

7. M. Yu yang huo mei yu.
7. Have you any matches?
VOCABULARY OF DIALOGUE No. 21

1. 毯 T’an.³ Carpet, rug.

2. 暗 An, ngan.⁴ Dark, secret.

3. 點 Tien.³ To ignite, to light, as lamps, fires, etc.
   燈 Tèng.¹ Lamp.
4. 盞 Chan.³ Classifier of lamps.
   油 Yu.² Oil.
   亮 Liang.⁴ Bright, light.
5. 安 An, ngan.¹⁴ To fix, place.
   電 Tien.⁴ Electricity, lightning.
6. 要 Yao.⁴ Important. (Same word as for “want”, etc.)
   緊 Chin.³ Important. (Same word as for “tight”.)
   要緊 Yao-chin. Important.
   枝 Chih.¹ Classifier of candles, pens, etc., branch.
   蠟 La.⁴ Wax.
   燭 Chu.² Candle.
7. 洋火 Yang-huo. Matches (foreign fire).


8. Wo hsiang k'ou tai li yu i ho, k'o shih chao pu cho la.
   8. I thought I had a box in my pocket, but I can't find it.

   9. Then there is nothing we can do.
   "Mei yu fa tzu"—a very common expression of despair, equal to "There is nothing we can do about it".

10. Wo chiu pa ti t'an na tao wai pie'rh ch'ü, tou i tou.
    10. I will take the carpet outside and shake it.

11. Hao, wo chiu kei ni pang mang, pa t'an tzu chüan ch'i lai. (or) (tieh ch'i lai).
    11. Good, I will help you to roll up the carpet.

    12. It is getting cool now, we ought to light fires in the house.

13. Yuan tzu li yu t'an (mei) mo yu.
    13. Is there any coal in the yard?

    14. None at all, we haven't bought any this year, yet.
    "I tie'rh yeh mei yu". "Yeh" in this position adds great strength to the negative.

15. Ch'u fang yu ch'ai huo mei yu.
    15. Is there any firewood in the kitchen?

    16. Yes. I will put some in the stove and light it.

17. Mei yu yang huo, tsên yang pan ni.
    17. But how shall we manage without matches?
8. 袋 口袋 找
   Tai. Bag, pouch.
   K'ou-tai. Pocket, bag, sack.
   Chao. To look for, seek.

10. 抖
    Tou. To shake, shudder.

11. 捲 疊
    Chüan. To roll up, a roll.
    Tich. To fold up, a fold.

12. 涼 應 應當 生
    Liang. Cool, chilly.
    Ying. Ought.
    Ying-tang. Ought.
    Shêng. To produce, to light a fire.

13. 炭 煤
    T’an. Coal.
    Mei. Coal.

15. 柴 柴火
    Ch’ai. Firewood, fuel.
    Ch’ai-huo. Firewood.

16. 炉
    Lu. Lou. Stove, brazier.
18. **S.** Wo shang ko pi jên chia ch’ü, chieh ch’ü.

"Ko pi jên chia"—the people on the other side of the partition or wall, so neighbours, close ones.


"I hui lai, chiu..."—"as soon as you come back, then...".

20. **S.** T’ai yang k’uai hsia ch’ü ti shih hou, jên jên tou chūeh tê lêng.

21. **M.** Ni k’an na kuei tzu li mien yu jung t’an, na ch’u liang ch’uang lai.

22. **S.** Hsien shèng t’ang i t’ang; to kai shang i tie’rh. Tsai to ho k’ai shui, ch’u i tie’rh han. Kuo liang t’ien chiu hao la.

23. **M.** K’ai k’ai na ko ch’ou t’i. Li pie’rh yu fa han yao. Wo ch’ih san liang k’o. Tsai pa têng mieh la, wo yao shui chiao.

18. I will go to our next-door neighbours and borrow from them.

19. Go without delay. I feel cold. Light the fire as soon as you come back.

20. Just before sun-down everybody feels cold.

21. In the cupboard (wardrobe) there you will find some blankets. Take out a couple.

22. Lie down sir with some extra covers. Then drink lots of hot water to induce perspiration. (And) you will be all right again in a few days (lit. two days).

23. Open that drawer. There is some medicine in it to induce perspiration. I will take two or three tablets. Then put out the lamp, I want to sleep.

19. 覺 Chüeh. Chiao.² Feel, be conscious of. 冷 Lêng.³ Cold.

20. 陽 Yang.² The sun, male principle, south.


22. 躺 T’ang.³ To recline, lie down. 汗 Han.⁴ Perspiration. 出汗 Ch’u-han. To perspire. 顆 K’o.¹ Classifier of pills, seeds, pearls, etc.

23. 抽 Ch’ou.¹ To draw out. 屉 T’i.⁴ Drawer, in a table, etc. 抽屜 Ch’ou-t’i. Drawer. 滅 Mich.⁴ To put out, as a lamp, candle, etc. 藥 Yao.⁴ Yo.⁴ Medicine. 薬 Ditto Ditto. 睡 Shui.⁴ To sleep.
DIALOGUE No. 22

Discussion between Master (M) and Servant (S) on some personal needs such as Washing, Waking, Wages, etc.

1. M. Na jê shui lai, wo yao hsi lien.  
1. Bring me some hot water to wash my face.

2. S. Hsien shêng pu yao hsi tsao ma.  
2. Don’t you want to have a bath?

3. M. K’ung p’a jê shui pu kou hsi tsao.  
3. I am afraid there will not be enough hot water for a bath.

4. S. Yeh kou la. Shui hên jê, t’ien tien lêng shui, chiu pu ta li.  
4. Just about enough. The water is very hot, and if a little cold is added, it should be about enough.

"Yeh", we saw in the last dialogue, strengthens the negative it precedes; here we see how it modifies the sense of a positive expression; e.g., "enough", just enough, no surplus.

5. M. K’o shih wo yeh të kua lien, yung lêng shui pu hsing.  
5. But I must shave as well, and cold water won’t do for that.

6. S. Hsien shêng k’o la ma. Wo pa i pei liang k’ai shui, na tao lou shang ch’ü la.  
6. Are you thirsty sir. I have taken a glass of cold boiled water upstairs.

The "la" at the end of the sentence marks the whole as being in the past tense.
VOCABULARY OF DIALOGUE No. 22

1. 熱
   Jê.⁴ Hot.
   洗
   Hsi.³ To wash.
   臉
   Lien.³ The face, countenance.

2. 澡
   Tsao.³ To bathe.
   洗澡
   Hsi-tsao. To take a bath.

4. 添
   T'ien.¹ To add to, increase.

5. 刮
   Kua.¹ To scrape, to shave.
   刮臉
   Kua-lien. To shave the face.

6. 冷開水
   Liang-k'ai-shui. Cold boiled water.
7. M. Ming t’ien wo yao tsao tsao ti ch’i lai. Ni wu tien chung lai chiao wo.

7. I want to get up very early to-morrow. Come and call me at five o’clock.

The duplication of the adverb “tsao” intensifies the meaning as “very early”.

8. S. Wo k’an hsien shêng fa la, hai shih tsao tien shui ti hao.

8. I can see that you are tired sir. You will do well to get to bed a little early.


9. Bring me some warm water to wash my hands when I get up to-morrow.

10. M. (cont.). Tso t’ien ni pa ch’uang mei yu p’u hao, wo mei yu shui hao chiao.

10. You did not make the bed properly yesterday. I did not sleep very well.

11. S. Tui pu ch’i hsien shêng. Tso t’ien shih ch’ing t’ai to, mang pu kuo lai.

11. I am sorry sir. There was too much to do yesterday, and I couldn’t overtake the work.

“Tui pu ch’i”—match not rise, I have not done what the circumstances called for; apologies!
“Mang pu kuo lai”—busy not get round, too much to do.

12. M. Yao shih ni shih ch’ing t’ai to, kan pu kuo lai ti shih hou, wo chiu kai kei ni chiao i ko pang mang ti.

12. If you have too much to do, and cannot do everything, I must get someone to help.
8. 乏 Fa.² Fatigued, tired.  
    睡 Shui.⁴ To sleep, slumber.  
    睡觉 Shui-chiao. To sleep.

9. 溫 Wên.¹ Warm, mild, to warm up.  
    手 Shou.³ Hand, hands.

10. 鋪 P‘u.¹ To spread, or make a bed.

11. 對不起 Tui-pu-ch‘i. To offend, apologise.
13. S. Chiao hsien shêng fei hsìn. Pu kuo hai yu i chien shih ch'ing ho hsien shêng shuo.

"Chiao . . . fei hsìn"—cause . . . expend heart; thank you!

14. M. Shih shih mo shih ch'ing, ni shuo pa.

15. S. Hsien tsai chêng li t'ou shêng huo chêng tu t'ai kao, kuo jih tzu hên nan.

"Shêng huo"—life, living, conditions of life. "Kuo jih tzu"—to pass the days; "living" in the sense of "to get a living". "Chêng tu"—standard. "Piao chun" is also used.

16. M. Ni i ko yüeh chêng to shao ch'ien.

17. S. Pa k'uai ch'ien i ko yüeh, pu kou yung.

18. M. Na mo, wo chiu kei ni chia san k'uai ch'ien i ko yüeh, hsing pu hsing.


18. Many thanks (lit. I have caused you to expend thought). But there is another matter on which I must speak to you.

14. Tell me what it is.

15. The standard of living in the city is so high that I find it difficult to live.

16. How much do you earn a month?

17. Eight dollars. It isn't enough.

18. Then I will give you a rise of three dollars a month. Will that do?

19. I must make it do. Thanks.
15. 城活 生活 程度 生活程度
Ch’êng.² Living, livelihood, etc.
Huo.² One’s life, livelihood, etc.
Shêng-huo. Capacity.
Ch’êng.² Capacity.
Tu.⁴ Standard.
Ch’êng-tu. Capacity, standard.
Chêng-tu. The standard of living.

日 過日子 難
Jih.⁴ Day, the sun.
Kuo-jih-tzu. To live, to pass one’s days.
Nan.² Difficult.

16. 搏
Chêng.⁴ To earn.

19. 勉
Mien.³ To rouse oneself, make an effort.
DIALOGUE No. 23

The Week’s Work in the House

Master or Mistress, M. Servant, S.


"T’ien t’ien"—day by day. "Mei t’ien" is also in common use. Notice "mei li pai", "ti, êrh, san, etc.", for the days of the week, which begins with Monday. Sunday is "Li pai jih", or "t’ien", or "Hsing ch’i jih" ("t’ien").

1. I will now tell you about each day’s chores. On Mondays you must do the washing (laundry).

2. S. Pa pu kan ching ti i fu, sung tao hsi i tien ch’ü, hsing pu hsing.

2. Couldn’t we send the dirty linen to the laundry?


3. To send the dirty linen to the laundry is uneconomical. For when the clean garments come back they are full of holes.

4. S. Na mo, chiao ts’ai fêng pu i pu.

4. Then you have to get the tailor to patch them.

5. M. Shih ti. Ni k’an chê i chien han shan, ch’ê ti ti fang t’ai to.

5. That is so. Lock at this shirt, torn in too many places altogether.
VOCABULARY OF DIALOGUE No. 23

1. 天天 T’ien-t’ien. Daily, every day.
   禮 Li. Worship, rite, ceremony.
   拜 Pai. Worship, revere.
   禮拜 Li-pai. Worship, the week, days of the week.
   每 Mei. Each, every.
   衣服 T’ fu. Clothes.

2. 店 Tien. An inn, used of laundries.

3. 窟 K’u. Hole, cave.
   窟窿 Lung. Hole, cave.

4. 補 Pu. To patch, a patch, repair, tonic.

5. 衫 Shan. Shirt.
   汗衫 Han-shan. Shirt, vest.
   搔 Ch’ê. To tear, rend.
6. S. Hsi i tien ti kung jên, pu chia hsiao hsin, pu ju chia li hsi ti hao.

"Chia hsiao hsin"—add a little heart, pay careful attention; for the "little heart" is intended to denote concentration.


8. S. Shou shih k'o fang ho hsi tsao fang, shih wo ti shih; shou shih fan t'ing ho ch'u fang, shih ch'u tzu ti shih, shih pu shih.

"Ch'u tzu" more definitely means cook than "ta shih (ssu) fu", as "ch'u" is kitchen.


"Ts'ê so"—w.c.; also "mao fang" or "mao ssu".
"Kuei shui pan"—revert who do?

10. S. P'ing ch'ang chê hsieh tou shih k'an mên ti huo shih ma fu kan ti.


"Wu lun"—not discuss, so, no matter.

6. The workmen in the laundry don't take special care, (so) we had better wash at home.

7. Every Tuesday you must do all the rooms in the house, upstairs and down.

8. To clear up the guest-room and the bathroom is my job, but the dining-room and the kitchen are the cook's responsibility, aren't they?
6. 小心  Hsiao-hsin. Take care, cautious.

8. 廳  T'ing.¹ Hall, court, room.

9. 廁所  Ts'ê-so.¹ W.C.

9. 廁所  Ts'ê.⁴ Ssu.⁴ Private, closet.

9. 廁所  So.³ A place.

9. 廁所  Kuei.¹ Revert to, to belong to.

10. 平常  P'ing-ch'ang. Usual, ordinary.

10. 常常  Ch'ang.⁴ Usual, ordinary, constant.


10. 馬夫  Ma-fu. Groom.
12. S. T'ing hsien shêng ti 12. Your orders shall be 
fên fu. obeyed.

"T'ing"—hear, in the sense of obey; "fên fu"—orders.

ts'a yin tzu ho should polish the sil-
po li ch'i chü; ver and glass ware.
ch'üan fang tzu Take up the carpets
ti ti t'an yao tou from all rooms and
i tou, huo cho shake them, or hang
kua tsai yüan tzu them in the yard and
li tan i tan. beat them.

14. S. Chê yang tso, hui 14. But that will cause a 
ch'en hên ta, lot of dust, and the 
chiao lin chü pu neighbours won't like 
hsi huan. it.

"Chiao...pu hsi huan" ("chiao" makes the verb passive)—will 
be displeased.

15. M. Na pu hsiang kan, 15. That doesn't matter, 
chia li tê chiang we must observe hy-
ch'iou wei shêng. giene in the home.

"Pu hsiang kan"—not his concern, so does not matter.
"Chiang chiu"¹ means to be particular about.
Another "chiang¹ chiu⁴" means to put up with something which 
is not quite as one would like it. (See Dialogue 27, sentence 21.)

16. S. Ko jên yao chiang 16. Every man ought to 
chiau ko jên ti wei be particular about 
shêng, tan shih hygiene as far as he 
k'o pu yao fang himself is concerned;
12. 吩咐
Fên. Command, order.
Fu. Command, order.

13. 擦
Ts’a. To rub, polish.
銀
Yin. Silver, money.
玻璃
Po. Glass.
器
Li. Glassware.
揮
Ch’i. Vessel, utensil.
掛
Tan. To dust, beat.
Kua. Hang up.

14. 灰塵
Hui. Ashes.
塵
Ch’en. Dust, small particles.
鄰居
Lin. Neighbouring, neighbour.
居
Chü. Dwell.
鄰居
喜歡
Hsi. Pleasure, joy.
喜歡
Huan. Pleased, rejoice.

15. 相干
Hsiang. Mutual.
不相干
Pu-hsiang-kan. Of no concern, of no moment.
講究
Chiang. To be particular, explain.
究
Chiu. To analyse, examine, be particular about.
講究
Chiang-chiu. To be concerned or particular about.
衛
Wei. To guard, protect.
衛生
Wei-shêng. Hygiene.

16. 同時
T’ung. Together with, with, the same.
時
T’ung-shih. At the same time, concurrently.
妨
Fang. Hinder, obstruct.
各
Ko. Each, every.
ai jën chia ti wei shêng.

"Jên chia"—others, other people.

17. M. Ni shuo ti yu li. 17. There is reason in what you say. But now less of this chatter, get on with your job.

Hsien ts'ai pu yao to shuo hua, kan ni ti ch'ü pa.

"Kan ni ti"—mind your own business!

18. S. Hsien shêng kei wo i k'uai kan ching ti ma pu, wo chiu ch'ü mo cho tzu, i tzu, ching tzu, i ch'ieh ti chia chü. 18. If you will provide me with a clean duster, I will dust the table, chairs, mirror, and all the rest of the furniture.

19. M. Hao. Yeh pu yao wang la, mo chia chü ti shih hou, yao pa ch'uang hu k'ai k'ai, huan huan k'ung ch'i. 19. Good. And don't forget to open the windows when you are dusting, to change the air.

20. S. T'ien ch'i hao ti shih hou, k'o i chê yang pan; kua fêng hsia yü ti shih hou, k'ung p'a pu hsing. 20. In fine weather that can be done; but when it is windy or wet, I fear that would be inadvisable.
16. 碌 Ai, ngai. Stand in the way, hinder.
妨碍 Fang-ai. Hindrance, obstruct.


18. 麻 Ma. Hemp.
麻布 Ma-pu. Duster.
抹 Mo. To dust, polish, rub with the hand.
鏡 Ching. Mirror.
傢具 Chia. Tools, furniture.
具 Chü. Implements.
切 Ch’ieh. All, everything.
一切 I-ch’ieh. Everything, all.

19. 換 Huan. To change, exchange.
空 K’ung. Empty, vast, air.
氣 Ch’i. Atmosphere, air.
空氣 K’ung-ch’i. Air, fresh air.

20. 風 Fèng. The wind.
括 Kua. To blow.
括風 Kua-fèng. Windy.
雨 Yü. Rain.
下雨 Hsia-yü. To rain, it is raining.
DIALOGUE No. 24

Talking Accounts with the Cook

Mistress, M. Cook, C.

1. **M.** *(to cook).* Ta ssu fu lai suan chang.

2. **C.** T'ai t'ai shao wei teng i teng, wo na chang pu ho ch'ien pi.

3. **M.** Chê ko (pên) li pai ni mai la shêm-mo tung-hsi, man man ti shuo pa.

4. **C.** Chê ko li p'ai wo mai la yang jou, pai ts'ai, ti tan, hung lo pei, chi tan, hua shêng.

"Hsing-ch'i" is the secular designation of the week, and is used also for the individual days of the week, with the numeral "i, êrh, san, etc.," attached. The other common term for week is "li-pai," which lit. means worship, and was introduced by the Christian missionaries. The older Chinese designation of the days of the week consisted of names of planets.

5. **M.** Mu yu mai niu jou, ya tzu, yeh chi ma.

5. Haven't you bought any beef, ducks or pheasants?
VOCABULARY OF DIALOGUE No. 24

2. 簿
   賬簿
   鉛筆
   本
   Ch'ien.¹ Lead, black-lead.
   Ch’ien-pi. Pencil.
   Pên.³ This, native, one’s own.

4. 星
   星期
   星期
   白菜
   地蛋
   紅蘿蔔
   雞蛋
   花
   花生
   Hsing.¹ Star.
   Ch’i.² Date, period of time.
   Hsing-ch’i. Week.
   Pai.² White.
   Ti.⁴ The earth.
   Tan.⁴ Egg, egg-like.
   Ti-tan. Potatoes.
   Hung.² Red.
   Lo.² Carrots.
   Pei.² Carrots.
   Chi-tan. Eggs, egg.
   Hua.¹ Flower.
   Hua-shêng. Peanuts.

5. 牛肉
   鴨
   野
   Ya¹ (tzu). Duck.
   Yeh.³ Wild, rustic.

6. There are none in the market these days. But the day after to-morrow is market day. There may be some then.


7. We have not eaten cauliflower for a long time. Surely there are some to be had?

8. C. Yu shih yu, k’o shih chia ch’ien t’ai ta, wo pu kan mai.

8. There are some, but the price is too high, I dare not buy.


9. Probably that is because it is not the season. Watch out, and when the price comes down, buy.

“Liu hsin”—take care.
“Chia lo”—falling prices. “Chia chang” is rising prices.


10. Do you like salads? They are plentiful and cheap just now.

“Yu to yu p’ien i”. “Yu . . . yu”—both . . . and.

11. M. Hsi huan ch’ih, k’o shih tê hsiao hsin, shêng ts’ai tsung tê hsien yung k’ai shui, hsi kuo, ts’ai kan ch’ih.

11. Yes, but you must be careful, salads should be washed in cold boiled water before one dare eat them.

“Ts’ai” in such phrases means “then” in a logical sense of sequence. Something must first be done, and “then” something else can happen.
  場 Ch’ang. Open place, square, market.
  集 Chi. The fair.
  趕集 Kan-chi. To go to the fair, hold a fair.


9. 時候 Shih-hou. Time, season.
  留 Liu. To keep, hold.
  留心 Liu-hsin. Observe, notice, give attention to.
  落 Lo. Lao. To come down, to fall, as prices, leaves.

10. 生 Shêng. Raw, as opposed to cooked.
    又 Tu. Both, again.
12. C. Chin t’ien wo shên shang pu shu-fu, fa shao, k’ung p’a shang la fêng la.

“Shang fêng”, wounded by the wind, so means catch cold. Other expressions for this are “chao liang”, or “shou fêng”.

13. M. Wo ch’ing tai-fu (i shêng) lai k’an i k’an, hao pu hao.

“Tai fu”, a common designation of doctor; others are “I shêng”, “k’an ping ti hsien shêng”.

14. C. Pu yao ch’ing hsi i, ch’ing Chung kuo hsien shêng, kei wo k’ai fang tzu, chiu hsing.

14. Don’t ask a western doctor. I will ask a Chinese doctor to write out a prescription.

15. M. K’o shih chang hai mei yu suan, t’ung kung hua la to shao ch’ien.

15. But we haven’t taken the account yet. How much have you spent altogether?

16. C. T’ung kung hua la shih i k’uai wu mao liu.

16. I have spent altogether eleven dollars and fifty-six cents.

17. M. K’ung p’a chê ko chang suan ts’o la, ni tsai suan suan.

17. I fear you have made a mistake in this account, try again.

18. C. Wo k’an mei yu suan ts’o. Wo hai shêng hsia liang k’uai ch’i.

18. I think it is right. I have a balance of two dollars seventy.

19. M. K’ung p’a ni nao ching pu ch’ing ch’u, wo k’an ni hai hsia ch’ien chiu mao.

19. I think your brain must not be quite clear, I think you are short ninety cents.
12. 舒服 Shu-fu. Comfortable, happy, contented.
    燒 Shao.¹ Hot, feverish, heat.
    發燒 Fa-shao. To be hot, have a fever.
    傷 Shang.¹ To injure, to catch (cold), be injured.

13. 大 Tai. T'ai.⁴ Great, big.
    大夫 Tai-fu. Doctor.
    醫 I.¹ To heal, cure.
    醫生 I-shêng. Doctor.

14. 西醫 Hsi-i. Western doctor.
    方 Fang¹ (tzu). Prescription.
    開方子 K'ai-fang-tzu. Write a prescription, to prescribe.

18. 剩 Shêng.⁴ Remainder, left over.

19. 欠 Ch'ien.⁴ To be short, to owe.
    腦 Nao.³ The brain.
    腦經 Nao-ching. Brain.
20. Perhaps you are right. My head is a little bit fuzzy.

20. C. Ych hsü t'ai t'ai suan ti tui. Wo ti nao tzu chiu shih hun i tie'rh.
DIALOGUE No. 25
Travelling by Road

Between two friends, A and B

1. A. Ming t’ien wo yao ch’u mên.
1. To-morrow I intend to travel.

2. B. Hsien shêng shang na-érh ch’ü.
2. Where are you thinking of going?

3. A. Ta suan shang P’u Tien Ch’ih ch’ü, k’an i ko p’êng yu.
3. I plan to go to P’u Tien Ch’ih, to look up one of my friends.

Note "k’an" in the sense of "call on" a person. Sometimes the expression "k’an-wang" is used, the "wang" being the word for expect, hope, etc., and so you get the idea of "going to inquire about", much as we say "I am going to ‘look up’ my friend".

4. B. Hao, wo yüan i p’ei nin ch’ü, hsing pu hsing.
4. Good, I would like to accompany you — may I?

"P’ei" means to accompany, but is only used of "equals" in the social scale. A servant cannot use it to his master. If it were a servant speaking he would say "Wo ken hsien-sheng chü", i.e., I will follow you.

5. A. Tan shih ni yao tai ni tzu chi tsai lu shang ch’ih ti tung hsi.
5. All right, provided you carry your own road rations. (Lit. but you ought to carry . . .)

6. B. Na pu ch’êng wên t’i, hsien-shêng chi tien chung ch’i shên.
6. That presents no difficulty, what time shall you start?

7. A. Tsai ch’ing tsao, t’ai yang kang shang lai ti shih hou, tung shên.
7. Very early, as soon as the sun rises, we will start.
3. 打算  Ta-suan. To plan, propose, think of doing.
普池 Ch’ih.^2 Pool, pond.
普天池 P’u-t’ien-ch’ih. The name of a place.

4. 陪 P’ei.^2 To accompany, act as companion, etc.

6. 題 T’i.^2 To mention, subject of discourse.
問題 Wên-t’i. A question.
不成問題 Pu-ch’êng-wên-t’i. That makes no question.

7. 太陽 T’ai-yang. The sun.
剛 Kang.¹ Just now, just then.
動身 Tung-shên. To move, start on a journey.
起身 Ch’i-shên. To move, start on a journey.
8. B. Hsien shêng tso (Peking cart) or riding? 
chiao ch'ê, hai shih ch'i shêng k'ou ni.

Note the difference between "ch'i" and "tso". The former means to ride astride, so is applicable to bicycle or horse riding. "Tso" is used of travelling by any vehicle which permits of "sitting" in the ordinary way.

9. A. Yeh pu tso chiao ch'ê, yeh pu ch'i ma, wo-mên pu hsing pa.
"Yeh pu . . . ye eh pu"—neither . . . nor.

9. Neither by cart nor by horse, we will walk.

10. B. Na t'ai fei shih, tsèm-mo pu tso ch'i ch'ê ni.

10. But that is difficult, why don't you go by auto?

11. A. Tso kung kung ch'i ch'ê, pu shu fu, lu tao pu p'ing, tien p'o ti li-hai.

"Li hai" is a very common adverb indicating an extreme condition, much as we use "terribly" in colloquial speech.

11. To go by omnibus is not comfortable, the road is rough and one gets badly jolted.

12. B. P'u Tien Ch'ih li to ma yüan. Ch'ih from here?

12. How far is Pu Tien Chê li to ma yüan. Ch'ih from here?

13. A. Ta yêuh shih wu li.

"Ta yêuh" (yo) is generally used, of statements about figures, measurements, etc., as is "ta lüeh" (whereas "ta kai" may be applied to any condition where vague probability or generalities are implied). But this is not a hard and fast distinction.

13. Probably about fifteen li.

14. B. Na tao pu yüan, pu hsing yeh k'o i.

14. That is not very far for sure, walking is possible.
8. 轎
    Chiao. A sedan chair.
    轎車 Chiao-ch'ê. A mule-cart, Peking cart.
    騎 Ch'i. To ride astride.
    牲 Shêng. An animal, cattle.
    牲口 Shêng-k'ou. Animals in general, horses, mules, donkeys, camels, etc.

9. 步
    Pu. A step, pace, on foot.
    步行 Pu-hsing. To walk, go on foot.

10. 費
    Fei. To spend, waste.
    費事 Fei-shih. To spend oneself on something, difficult.
    汽車 Ch'i-chê. Motor car (lit. vapour car).

11. 公
    Kung. Public, general, official.
    公共汽車 Kung-kung-ch'i-chê. The omnibus.
    顛 Tien. Upset, jolting, bumpy.
    簷 P'o. Winnow, used of the jolting movement.
    厲 Li. Sharp, severe, oppress.
    害 Hai. Hurt, injure.
    厲害 Li-hai. Extreme, terribly.

13. 約
    Yüeh. Yo. Agree, pledge, about.
    大約 Ta-yüeh. Roughly, about, of measurements.
15. A. K’o shih k’o i, tan shih pi hsū tai i ko lèng jê shui p’ing tzu, chuang man liao k’ai shui ch’ü ho.

Note “k’o shih k’o i”, where the verb “k’o” is duplicated with the idea of modifying the strength of it. Here “it is just possible”, to walk, but there are conditions attached to walking it.


“Pu liao” following a verb indicates impossibility of the verbal action being carried into effect. It differs from “pu te”, used in this way, in that the latter usually carries with it a sense of “oughtness” or “fitness”.

17. A. Yeh tai i ko yū san huo yū i, fu t’ien k’ên hsia yū.

“K’ên” means willing, and so in colloquial speech tends to be used in the sense of “prone to”; “disposed to”, etc.

18. B. Hsien-shêng yū liao tê hao, wo chao pan chiu shih la.

18. You exercise good forethought, I will carry out your orders (a politely humorous expression).

19. A. Wo-mên i ching p’ao la shih lai li lu, wo-mên tsai lü kuan t’ing i hui’érh, hao pu hao.

19. We have walked about ten li, shall we stop at an inn for a while?
17. 傘  San.³ Umbrella, parasol.
 雨傘  Yü-san. Umbrella.
 雨衣  Yü-i. Raincoat.
 伏  Fu.² The dog-days, great heat.
 伏天  Fu-t’ien. The height of summer.
 背  K’ên.³ Willing, prone to.

18. 料  Liao.⁴ To calculate.
 預料  Yü-liao. Foresee, foresight.
 照  Chao.¹ According to, shine, photograph.
 照辦  Chao-pan. To act according to instructions.

19. 跑  P’ao.³ To run, also to walk (long distances).
 旅  Lü.³ Travel, journey.
 館  Kuan.¹ Hostel, hotel, etc.
 旅館  Lü-kuan. Hotel, hostel.
 停  T’ing.² To halt, stop.
 一會兒  I-hui-rh. A while, a short time.
20. B. Chê t’iao lu shang ti lü tien pu tsêm-mo hao, tao pu ju tso tsai lu p’ang, hsieh i hui’èrh.

"Pu tsên-mo (tsêm-mo) hao ". The "tsêm-mo " has the sense of "very", "much", although its basic meaning is "how, why, what?", etc.

21. A. T’ung i, wo-mên yeh k’o i ho i k’ou shui, ch’ih chi k’uai ping kan.

" T’ung i ", lit. same meaning, so agreed.

"Ping kan ". Note how "kan ", dry, comes after the noun. So in "p’u-t’ao-kan ", which means raisins, lit. grapes dried.

21. Agreed, we can also have a drink of water and munch a few biscuits.

22. B. Ai ! lao-hsien shêng tao Pu Tien Ch’ih hai yu chi li lu.

"Lao ", old, an epithet of respect when addressed to strangers.

22. Ai ! you old friend (teacher), how far is it to P’u Tien Ch’ih?

23. A. Pu yüan, hai yu wu liu li lu.

23. Not far, there is still about five or six li.

24. B. Ch’ien mie’rh ti lu hao tsou pu hao tsou.

24. Is the road good ahead?

25. A. Hao tsou, pu kuo ts’un tzu wai pie’rh yu chi ko ni k’êng chiu shih la.

25. Good going, there are a few puddles outside the village, but that is all.


26. Is there a restaurant inside the village?
20. 條  
店  
旁  

T'iao.²  Length, classifier of long things.  
Tien.⁴  Inn.  
P'ang.²  Side.  

21. 餅  
餅乾  
同  

Ping.³  Biscuit, cake.  
Ping-kan.  Biscuits.  
T'ung.²  Together, with.  

25. 村  
坑  

Ts'un.¹  Village.  
K'êng.¹  Pit-hollow.  

26. 飯館  

Fan-kuan.  Eating-house, restaurant.
27. A. Mei yu hao ti, mai ti yeh pu kuo shih chia ch’ang pien fan.

"Chia ch’ang pien fan", frequently written up on the outside wall of a wayside inn (lit. home ordinary ready food).

28. B. Fan kuan, hao chao pu hao chao ni.

29. A. Hao chao, i chin ts’un mên, tsai lu tung ti chiu shih la.

"I chin... chiu"; the "i" has the sense of "as soon as" when coupled with a verb followed by "chiu".

30. B. Lao chia, lao chia.

31. A. Mu yu shêm-mo, li tang ti.

That’s nothing, the usual courtesy.
27. 家常便飯 Chia-ch’ang-pien-fan. Everyday food, always ready.
DIALOGUE No. 26

Travelling by Train

Between two friends, A and B

1. A. Chê ko chê shih wang Peiching k’ai ti chê pu shih.
1. Is this the train for Peking?

2. B. Pu shih, chê shih wang Hankou k’ai ti chê.
2. No, it is the train for Hankow.

3. A. Wang Peiching k’ai ti huo chê, shih tsai na i ko yüeh t’ai ni.
3. On which platform is the train for Peking?

"Yüeh t’ai", lit. moon terrace. I will hazard a guess that the term arose from the fact that at some station or other in the early days of railways in China the platform was of the crescent form, and so the term "moon" came to be applied to all station platforms whatever their form.

4. B. Shih ti san hao yüeh t’ai.
4. Platform No. 3.

5. A. Hsien-shêng yao ta na i teng ti p’iao.
5. Which class ticket do you want?

"Ta" is used instead of "mai", to buy, for a number of things including tickets.

6. B. Chê i t’ang shih k’uai chê, hai shih man chê ni.
6. Is this train express or slow?

Note that "t’ang" is a classifier of trains. It also means a particular journey of a train.

7. A. Shih man chê, k’o shih t’ou êrh teng tou yu.
7. It is slow, but it has both first and second class coaches.
3. 火車  
Huo-ch’ê. Train (lit. fire-cart).

月台  
Yüeh-t’ai. Platform.

4. 號  
Hao. Number, designation.

5. 打票  
Ta.³ To book, as a ticket
P’iao.⁴ Ticket, voucher.

6. 趨  
T’ang.⁴ Time, turn, track, classifier of trains.
8. B. Kua ti fan (ts’an) ch’è mei yu.
   “Kua’”—to hook on, a more descriptive expression than the neutral “yu”—is there?

9. A. Mei yu fan (ts’an) ch’è, k’o shih yu ch’u fang.
9. No restaurant car, but a kitchen car.

10. B. Ch’è shang nèng mai shèm-mo fan.
10. What food can one buy on the train?

11. A. Nèng mai niu ju p’ai, chi tzu t’ang, ch’ao chi tan tèng tèng.
11. Beef-steak, egg soup, omelette, etc.
   “Tèng, tèng”—kinds, kinds, a good equivalent of etc.

12. B. K’o i, chao chiao fu kei wo pan tung hsi.
12. Good, get a porter to carry my luggage (things).
   “K’u li”, lit. bitter strength—an apt description of a coolie’s life is sometimes used. There are several suggested derivations of the word, in Hindi, Tamil and Turkish languages.

13. A. Pan hsing li yu i ting ti chia ch’ien ma.
13. Is there a fixed price for carrying baggage?

14. B. Liang ko t’ung tzu i chien shih ting chia, ling wai hai tè kei chi ko chiu ch’ien.
14. Two coppers a piece is the fixed price, but you will have to give a few coppers as a pourboire.

15. A. Na mo wo - mèn shang ch’è pa.
15. Well, let’s get aboard the train.

16. A peaceful journey to you.
   “I lu’”—I, one, in the sense of “the whole”, a common use of the word.
8. 挂 Kua.¹ To hook up, used of connecting coaches.
    餐 Ts’an.¹ To dine, a meal.

11. 排 P’ai.² Chop, steak, row, rank.
    炒 Ch’ao.³ Fry, roast.
    炒雞蛋 Ch’ao-chi-tan. Scrambled eggs, omelette.

12. 脚 Chiao.³ Foot, leg, used for porters.
    脚夫 Chiao-fu. Porter, coolie.
    搬 Pan.¹ To move, carry from one place to another.


14. 銅 T’ung.² Copper, copper coin, with “tzu”
    酒錢 Chiu-ch’ien. Wine money, a tip.

16. 平 P’ing.² Peaceful, level, calm.
    安 An.¹ Peace.
17. **A.** T'î wo wên hou chia li pie'rh ti jên.  
"Wên hou" is used when sending inquiries or respects by means of another.

17. **B.** Huo ch'ê shih chi tien chung tao Peiching.  
18. *What time does the train arrive in Peking?*

19. **A.** Na tê k'an lu shang t'ung pu t'ung.  
19. *That all depends on whether the line is clear.*

"K'an" is look, see, etc., and so readily acquires the sense of "it depends".

20. **B.** Chê chi t'ien huo ch'ê hên to.  
20. *These days there are a good many goods-trains on the line.*

"Huo" is goods, and is in the fourth tone, thus distinguishing it from "huo", fire, in the third tone, which means the ordinary train.

21. **A.** K'o jên yeh shih pu shao.  
"K'o" means traveller as well as guest.

21. **B.** K'an kung ching, shih chú hsiang yao pien kêng.  
22. *It looks from the circumstances as though there is going to be a change in the situation.*

"K'an" here means it looks, it seems, etc.

23. **A.** Pu ts'o, yün ti tui wu, yeh shih to la.  
23. *True, lots of troops are being transported.*
17. 替
問候

T’i.⁴ Instead of, for.
Wên-hou. To inquire after one’s well-being.

19. 通

T’ung.¹ To pass through, clear, way, connection.

22. 光景

Kuang.¹ Light.
Ching.³ Circumstances, prospect.
Kuang-ching. Circumstances.
Chü.² Position, plan.
Shih-chü. The situation.
Hsiang.⁴ Like, image.
Pien.⁴ To change, alter.
Keng.¹ Alter, change, more, etc.
Pien-kêng. To change.

23. 運隊

Yün.⁴ To transport, move, revolve, luck.
Tui.⁴ A company, as of soldiers.
Wu.³ Rank of five, military.
Tui-wu. Soldiers, military.
24. B. Hsien-shêng t'ing ti shêm-mo hsiao hsi (hsin wên).

24. What news have you heard?

25. A. Mei yu shih mo k'o k'ao ti hsiao hsi, pu kuo yao yen, tao pu shao.

25. I have no reliable news, but the air is full of rumours.

26. B. P'an wang tsai pu yao ta chan; lao pai hsing shih k'u chi la.

26. I hope there is not going to be fighting again; the country folk are in bitter straits.

27. A. Chün fa, pu kuan na hsieh, chih ta suan k'uo ch'ung tzu chi ti ti p'an.

27. The militarists pay no regard to that, they are solely concerned with the enlarging of their spheres of influence.
24. 消息
Hsiao.\(^1\) To disperse, used with the next for news.
息
Hsi.\(^2\) Breathe, interest, news.
消息
新聞

25. 靠
K’ao.\(^4\) Rely, reliable, dependable, trust.
可靠
K’o-k’ao. Dependable, trustworthy.
謠
Yao.\(^3\) Lies, false.
謠言
Yao-yen. Lies, rumours.

26. 盼
P’an.\(^4\) Look for, hope.
望
Wang.\(^4\) Expect, look for, look at someone.
盼望
P’an-wang. Hope, expect.
戰
Chan.\(^4\) Fight, war, alarmed.
打戰
Ta-chan. To wage war.
老百姓
Lao-pai-hsing. The common people (hundred surnames).

27. 軍
Chün.\(^1\) Army, military, forces.
馥
Fa.\(^2\) Rank, class.
軍馥
Chün-fa. The militarists, military party.
管
Kuan.\(^3\) Control, concern, heed.
不管
Pu-kuan. To be unconcerned, pay no heed.
只
Chih.\(^3\) Only, solely.
擴
K’uo.\(^4\) Expand, extend.
充
Ch’ung.\(^1\) To fill.
擴充
K’uo-ch’ung. To expand and fill, aggrandisement.

28. 地盤
Ti-p’an. Sphere of influence, territory (lit. earth-plate).
28. B. Ai ya, ts'ai kuo ti shih T'ung Hsien, hai yu liang ko ch'ê chan, chiu tao la Peiching.

'Iang chan' is another way of expressing this.

28. I say, the station we have just passed is T'ung Hsien, there are only two more stations before we arrive at Peking.

29. A. Ken hsien-shêng t'an hua, shih chien pu chüeh tê kuo ti na mo k'uai.

29. The time has passed quickly. I have not noticed (the time) as we talked together.

30. B. Ling kuo chiao pu shao.

30. I have learned a lot from you.

31. A. Na êrh ti hua ni.

31. Nonsense.
28. 縣 (Hsien) District of administration, county town.
站 (Chan) Station, post.
車站 (Ch’ê-chan) Railway station.

29. 談 (T’an) To talk, gossip.
DIALOGUE No. 27

Travelling by Steamer and Train

Between two friends, A and B

1. A. Chi tien chung k’ai ch’uan.
1. At what hour does the steamer start?

2. B. T’ing shuo liu tien chung k’ai ch’ uan.
2. I hear (lit. have heard said) that it leaves at six o’clock.

3. A. Hsien tsai chi tien chung.
3. What time is it now?

4. B. San tien pan chung.
5. A. Na mo, shih hou hai tsao.
4. Half past three.
5. Then it is still early.

"Shih-hou hai tsao", lit. the time is still early.

6. B. Pu ts’o, tan shih k’ai ch’uan i ch’ien, wo yu hsieh shih ch’ing kan.
6. Correct, but before the steamer sails I have a few things to do.

Note the position of "i ch’ien", before. Like "i hou", after, it always follows the phrase which it qualifies.

7. A. Ni ta la ch’uan p’iao mei yu.
7. Have you booked your ticket for the boat?

8. B. Ta la p’iao, pu kuo hsing li hai mei yu shou shih hao la.
8. I have bought my ticket, but my baggage is not yet ready.

Note "hao" in the sense of ready: "fan hao la mei yu"—is the food ready?
VOCABULARY OF DIALOGUE No. 27

1. 船 Ch’uan.² Boat, ship.
開船 K’ai-ch’uan. The starting of a steamer, depart.
9. A. Na mo yang, ni hsin li tzu jan yu i tie'rh chao chi. 9. In that case you are naturally a bit anxious.
   You could say "ni chao chi", but "hsin li", in your heart, is more figurative.

10. B. Shih tê. Hsing k'uei yu chi ko p'êng yu pang mang 10. Just so, but fortunately I have a few friends to help.

11. A. Hao. Hsien shêng kan k'uai chü pa. Wo pu tsai tan wu ni ti kung fu. 11. Good. Hurry up and get the job done. I will not hinder you any longer.
   "Tan wu kung fu", lit. obstruct or prevent work, so hinder or delay anyone.

12. B. Tsa mên ch'uan shang tsai chien. 12. Then we'll meet again on the boat.

13. A. Tsai chien. 13. Till then, good-bye.

14. B. Hsien shêng yün ch'uan pu yün ch'uan. 14. Do you suffer from seasickness?

15. A. T'ou chi t'ien, wo chüeh tê pu hên shu fu, tan shih ch'uan shang kuan la, chiu pu chüeh tê tsên yang. 15. During the first few days I feel a little bit uncomfortable, but after one has got accustomed to the boat, I don't feel it very much.
   'Kuan la'—to be accustomed to, get used to, a very useful phrase.

16. B. Hsien shêng tao kuo wai kuo mo yu. 16. Have you travelled abroad?

17. A. Ying Kuo, Fa Kuo, Mei Kuo, wo tou tao kuo. 17. I have been in England, France and America.
9. 急
    Chi.\(^2\) Haste, urgent.
    Cho. Chao.\(^2\) Attain to.
    着急
    Cho-chi. To be bothered, in haste.

10. 幸
    Hsing.\(^4\) Felicitous, fortunate.
    K’uei.\(^1\) Lucky, luckily.
    幸虧
    Hsing-k’uei. Fortunately.

11. 趕快
    Kan-k’uai. Quickly, speedily.

14. 暈
    Yün.\(^4\) Dizzy.
    暈船
    Yün-ch’uan. To be seasick, mal-de-mer.

15. 慣
    Kuan.\(^4\) To be accustomed to.

17. 法國
    Fa-kuo. France.
    美
    Mei.\(^3\) Beautiful, admirable.
    美國
18. B. Hsien shèng hui shuo Fa Kuo hua ma.
19. A. Hui shuo chi chū t'ung ch'ang ti hua.
20. B. Fu na pie'rh ti shui t'u pu fu.
    "Fu . . . shui t'u pu fu ", lit. agree . . . water earth not agree.
    Does the climate agree with you?
21. A. Chiang chiu pa.
22. B. Na pie'rh ti t'ien ch'i, tsê mo yang.
23. A. Hsia t'ien pu hsiang Chung Kuo jè, tung t'ien pu hsiang Chung Kuo lêng.
    "Pu hsiang "—not like, not as.
24. B. Hsien shèng yeh ch'ih tê kuan Fa Kuo fan ma.
25. A. Fa Kuo fan mei yu Chung Kuo fan ti tzu wei; pu kuo ch'ih shang chi t'ien, yeh chiu tui fu.
24. And did you get used to French food?
25. French food is not so tasty as Chinese, but after trying it for a few days, it is not too bad.

Note this way of expressing comparison: "mei yu . . . (ti) tzu wei ", lit. has not Chinese food's flavour.
"Tui fu ", without any other qualifying word, means "just satisfactory ", nothing to enthuse about.

26. B. Ai ya, chin t'ien 26. My! what a wind is blowing to-day. It is not very steady aboard.
26. Ai ya, chin t'ien, kua ta fêng, ch'uan shang pu ta wên tang.
20. 服水土 Fu-shui-t’u. To find the climate agreeable (lit. agree-water-earth).

21. 將就 Chiang-chiu. Can put up with it. (See Note after sentence 15, Dialogue 28.)

23. 夏 Hsia. Summer (usually followed by “t’ien”).
冬 Tung. Winter (usually followed by “t’ien”).

味 Wei. Taste, flavour.
滋味 Tzu-wei. Flavour, taste.

穩當 Wên-tang. Steady, firm.
27. A. Nik’an, po lang tsên yang ti fan t’êng ch’î lai, ch’uan yao pai tê li hai.
27. Look at those waves, what a height they are! the boat is very unsteady.

28. B. Pieh p’a. Chih shêng hsia san t’iên ti hai lu, ch’uan chiu tao la ma t’ou.
28. Don’t be afraid. Only three more days of the sea, and the boat will put in at the port.

"Pieh" is short for "pu yao"—do not!

29. A. P’an wang. Yüeh tsao yûeh hao.
29. Let’s hope so. The earlier the better.

30. B. Fang hsin pa.
30. Don’t worry!

"Fang hsin", lit. let go your heart, heart’s case.
27. 海 Po. Waves of the sea.
波 Lang. Waves of the sea.
浪 Fan. To turn over.
翻 T’êng. To rise up, mount.
翻騰 Fan-t’êng. To mount, as waves.
搖 Yao. To roll, as a ship, shake.
擺 Pai. To swing, as a ship, shake.
搖擺 Yao-pai. The rock and swing of a boat.

碼頭 Ma-t’ou. The docks, harbour.
DIALOGUE No. 28

Some Common Idioms

This lesson is an exercise in the use of the compound verb with "pu" in between to represent "inability" to carry out the action or function of the principal verb.

The "possibility" of doing so is represented in one of two ways, viz.:—

Sentence 1. Kan shang la. I can catch up. . .

Kan tê shang. do. do.

So with all the rest.

1. T'a p'ao ti t'ai k'uai, wo kan pu shang.

2. Chê ko chuan ch'iang mei yu fêng 'erh, lo ssu, chuan tsuan pu chin ch'ü.

3. Chê ko shui hu i ching ch'êng man, tsai yeh chuang pu chin la.

4. Wo ti shih ch'ing t'ai to, pan pu tao la (mang pu kuo lai).

5. Ni yao chi tê su yü shuo ti hao, mang

1. He runs too quickly, I can't catch up with him (kan pu shang is also used of one's inability to compete with anybody in any sphere).

2. This brick wall has no cracks, I can't get a screw in.

3. This water jug is already full of water, I can't pour any more in.

4. I have too many things to do, I can't manage them.

5. You should remember the proverb which
2. 墙墙 Ch’iang.² Wall.
砖砖 Chuan.¹ Brick.
缝缝 Feng.² A crack, split.
螺螺 Le, lo.² A screw.
螺纹钉 Lo-ssu-ting. A screw.
转转 Chuan.³ Revolve, to turn.
钻钻 Tsuan.¹ To bore, awl, gimlet.
3. 壶壶 Hu.² Pot, kettle.
盛盛 Ch’êng.² To contain. Used with "man", full, to fill.

5. 俗俗 Su.² Common, vulgar.
俗语 Su-yü. Proverb, common saying.
chè pu hui, hui chè pu mang.

well says, "The busy man is unable, the able man is never busy."

6. Chê ko t'ung tzu chu /ang ti t'ai chin, wo na pu ch'u lai.

6. This bucket is too tightly packed, I can't pull anything out.

7. Chin t'ien wo t'ai ti tung-hsi t'ai to, mai pu ch'u ch'ü.

7. I have brought too many things to-day, I can't sell them all.

8. Chê i k'uai mu t'ou t'ai ying, ting tzu yeh ta pu chin ch'ü.

8. This piece of wood is too hard, I can't knock a nail in.

9. Hsin li mien ti i ssu to, k'o shih shuo pu ch'u lai.

9. I have many ideas tucked away in my mind (lit. heart), but I can't express them.

10. Chung-kuo jên yu chü su hua shuo, Ch'a hu chu chi tan tao pu ch'u lai, chiu shih chê ko i ssu.

10. The Chinese have a common saying, "If you boil an egg in a teapot, you can't pour it out", which expresses this idea.

Proverbs.

Here, in sentence 10, we have an instance of the use of the proverb. Others are scattered through the dialogues, and a number of them have been collated in Dialogue 38. The Chinese love to use proverbs; their everyday speech is full of them. Proverbs represent the concentrated wisdom of the ages, and form a most fascinating and fruitful study of Chinese philology.

11. Wo ti êrh to lung la, 11. I am a little deaf, I t'a shuo hua, wo t'ing pu ch'u lai. can't hear what he says.
8. 硬  Ying.⁴  Hard.

10. 倒  Tao.⁴  Pour, pour out.

11. 耳  Êrh.³  Ear.
    朵  To.³  Ear, pendent, classifier of pendent things.
    耳朵  Êrh-to.  Ear.
    聾  Lung.²  Deaf, to be deaf.
12. T'a ti yen ching hsia liao, t'a shêm-mo yeh k'an pu chien.
13. T'a shih chin shih yen, k'an pu ta ch'ing ch'u.
14. T'a shih ko ya pa, hua yeh pu hui shuo, jên chia shuo hua, t'a yeh t'ing pu chien.
15. Yao shih hsia liao yen, shêm-mo yeh k'an pu chien.
16. T'a ti ko pei fa ma, ni mo t'a, t'a yeh pu chüeh té.
17. T'a shih la chih chüeh.
18. Chê i chien i shang t'ai tsang, wo hsi pu kan ching.
19. 'Io shih i tzu, ta ta ti shih chin, chiu k'o i hsi kan ching la.

12. He is blind, he cannot see anything.
13. He is short-sighted, he cannot see clearly.
14. He is a deaf mute, he cannot speak himself, and when others speak he cannot hear them.
15. If a man is blind he cannot see anything at all.
16. His arm is benumbed, if you touch him he can’t feel it.
17. He lost consciousness.
18. This garment is too filthy, I can’t wash it clean.
19. Use more soap, and exert more strength, then it can be washed clean.
12. 眼  Yen.\(^3\)  Eye.
睛  Ching.\(^1\)  Eye, iris, pupil.
瞎  Hsia.\(^1\)  Blind.

14. 哑  Ya.\(^3\)  Dumb.
吧  Pa.\(^1\)  Dumb.
啝吧  Ya-pa.  Deaf mute.

16. 摩  Mo.\(^2\)  To feel.
胳  Ko.\(^1\)  Arm.
臂  Pei.\(^4\)  Arm.
麻  Ma.\(^2\)  Numb.

17. 失  Shih.\(^1\)  To lose.
失覚  Shih-chüeh.  To become unconscious.

18. 袋  Shang.\(^2\)  Clothes.

19. 膝  I.\(^2\)  Soap.
勁  Chin, ching.\(^4\)  Strength.
DIALOGUE No. 29
Clothing and Personal Matters
Between two students, A and B

1. A. T'ien leng, wo-men ch'uan mien p'ao huo wai t'ao.
   1. In the cold weather, we wear our cotton wool gown or an overcoat.

2. B. Ni men pu ch'uan p'i ngao ma.
3. A. P'i ngao tao ch'uan pu ch'i.
   "Ch'uan pu ch'i"—cannot afford to wear, lit. wear not rise (to).

4. B. Nien ch'ing ti jen, hsi huan yang chuang.
   4. The younger generation prefer foreign style.
   "Nien ch'ing ti jen" or "Ch'ing nien jen".

5. A. Na shih tzu jan ti.
6. B. Hsia t'ien to ch'uan sha pu, ch'ou tzu.

7. A. Tung t'ien ch'uan p'i hsieh, hsia t'ien ch'uan pu hsieh.
8. B. Tai ti shih ts'ao mao, huo che yang mao.
   "Tai", to wear, is used for anything worn on the head.

9. A. Nü jen ti i shang mo teng i tie'rh ts'ai hao.
   9. The womenfolk like modern clothes.
VOCABULARY OF DIALOGUE No. 29

1. 棉袍套
   P'ao. Long gown.
   T'ao. Cover, overcoat, wrapper.
   Wai-t'ao. Overcoat.
2. 袴皮袴
   P'i-ao. Leather or fur coat.

4. 年輕
   Nien-ch'ing. Young, youthful.
   Chuang. Style, appearance, feign, attire.

8. 戴
   Tai. To wear or carry on the head.
   Chê. To cover, screen.
   Chê-yang-mao. Sun helmet.

9. 摩登
   Mo-têng. Modern (transliteration).
10. B. Hsiu tzu, kua tzu, tu shih tuan ti. 10. Sleeves and gown are both short.
11. A. Wa tzu, hsien tsai shih hên ch’ang. 11. Stockings are very long now.
12. B. Hsüeh shêng yu ch’uan hsi Chuang ti shih hao. 12. Students have a personal liking for western garb.
13. A. Li fa, yeh shih yang chuang ti to. 13. Haircutting is also foreign style for the most part.
   "Lao pu chien"—seldom or rarely seen. "Ch’ing i pu chien" is also used.
15. A. Shu i shu t’ou fa. 15. Comb your hair.
16. B. Shua i shua t’ou fa ho ya ch’ih. 16. Brush your hair and teeth.
17. A. I fu yao ch’i chêng, kua tzu yao k’ou hao. 17. Keep your clothing tidy, and your coat buttoned.
18. B. Chih chia yao hsiu chêng; shou, lien, yao pao ch’ih kan ching. 18. Your finger nails must be kept in good order, and one’s hands and face should be kept clean.
19. B. Ch’u mên, yao tai hsi lien p’ên, ts’a lien pu, ho shou chüan, yeh pu yao wang la tai ya shua. 19. When you travel you should take with you a washing basin, a face cloth and towel, and don’t forget your toothbrush.

12. 嗜  Shih.^4 Fond of, addicted to.
    好  Hao.^4 Like, fond of.
    嗜好  Shih-hao.  A liking for, addicted to

13. 理  Li.^3 To arrange, dress.
    髮  Fa.^3 The hair of the head.
    理髮  Li-fa.  Haircut.

14. 辦  Pien.^4 (tzu).  The queue, plait.
    老不見  Lao-pu-chien.  Rare, scarcely seen (lit.
    long time not see).

15. 梳  Shu.  Su^1 (tzu).  Comb, to comb
    頭髮  T'ou-fa.  Hair of the head.

16. 刷  Shua.^1 (tzu).  To brush, a brush.
    牙 齒  Ya.^2 Teeth.
    Ch’ih.^3 Teeth.

17. 扣  K’ou^4 (tzu).  To button, button.

18. 指  Chih.^3 The fingers, toes, to point.
    甲  Chia.^3 Nails of fingers or toes, sheath.
    指甲  Chih-chia.  Finger or toe nails.
    保  Pao.^3 To guard, protect, preserve.
    持  Ch’ih.^2 To preserve, hold, grasp.
    保持  Pao-ch’ih.  Keep, preserve.

19. 出門  Ch’u-mên.  To travel (lit. go out of the
door).

    盆  P’ên.^2 A basin, bowl, bath.
    洗臉盆  Hsi-lien-p’ên.  A washhand basin.
    絹  Chüan.^4 Napkin, handkerchief, towel.
20. A. Tsao ch'i, tsao shui, mei t'ien yün tung, shih pao ch'ih k'ang chien ti hao fang fa.

20. Early to rise and early to bed, with exercise every day, is an excellent rule of health.

21. B. Pa tzu chi so hsüeh ti chiao kei pieh jên, yeh shih chang chih shih ti fa tzu.

21. Teach others what you yourself learn, is also a method of extending one's knowledge.

"So hsüeh ti", an illustration of "so" as a relative pronoun; that which one has learned.
"Pieh jên"—others. You will also hear "t'a (often read t'oe) jên" for this.

22. A. Ni p'êng chien ch'iung k'u jên yao t'i hsü t'a mên.

22. When you meet with the poor you should sympathise with them.

23. B. Jên mei yu fan ch'ih kai chou chi t'a mên.

23. When they have no food, then relieve them.

24. A. Yao fan ti wei pi jan shih ch'iung.

24. Beggars are not of necessity poor.

"Wei pi jan"—not necessarily, a little bookish, but often used. The common colloquial form is "pu pi".

25. B. Hai tzu mên yao chiao hsün t'a- mên shou kuei chü.

25. Teach children to be polite.

"Shou kuei chü", lit. observe the rules (of conduct). "Kuei" is a pair of compasses, and "chü" the carpenter's square, and so you get the idea of things that are clearly defined, such as rules, regulations, etc.
20. 運動 Yün-tung. Exercise, of physical character, movement, a movement.
康 K’ang. Well, hale, hearty, peace.
健 Chien. Sturdy, strong.
康健 K’ang-chien. Healthy, strong, well.
方法 Fang-fa. Method, way of doing things.

22. 窮 Ch’iung. Poor, poverty-stricken.
窮苦體 Ch’iung-k’u. Very poor, pitiable.
恤 T’i. Sympathise, respect, limbs, body.
恤 Hsü. Pity, sympathise.
23. 務 Chou. To be charitable, help, assist.
濟 Chi. To save, help, deliver.
24. 未 Wei. Not yet.
未必然 Wei-pi-jan. Not necessarily (lit. not-yet-must-be).

25. 訓 Hsün. To teach, instruct.
教訓 Chiao-hsün. Instruction, to teach.
守 Shou. To keep, observe.
規 Kuei. Rule, custom, manners.
矩 Chü. Rule, used with preceding for customs, manners, etc.
DIALOGUE No. 30

Learning Chinese: the Tones, Dialects, Writing, etc.

The Tones.

Tones refer to the pitch or inflection of the voice when speaking in Chinese. The number of tones in Chinese varies from four in the Pekinese dialect to as many as twelve in some of the Cantonese dialects. The student is referred to the chapter on Tones for the main points arising out of a discussion on this subject.

Foreigner, F. Chinese, C.

1. F. Chung Kuo hua nan hsüeh pu nan hsüeh ni.

2. C. Hsieh tzu pu nan, shuo hua pu yung i.

3. F. Shuo hua tsên yang pu yung i, nan ch’u tsai na’rh ni.

4. C. Wai kuo jên shuo Chung Kuo hua, nan ch’u tsai ssu shêng ti to.

5. F. Chê ssu shêng shih shih mo. or Shih mo chiao tse ssu shêng.

6. C. Ti i chiao shang p’ing, huo yin p’ing; ti êrh chiao hsia p’ing, huo

1. Is Chinese difficult to learn?

2. The writing is not difficult, but spoken language is not easy.

3. Why is it not easy to speak, just where does the difficulty lie?

4. For the most part foreigners speaking Chinese experience difficulty in regard to the four tones.

5. What are the four tones?

6. The first is called the “upper-even” tone; the second the “lower-even” tone,
4. 声  Shēng.¹ Tone, voice, repute.

6. 赏  Shang.³ Name of second tone, reward, bestow.
yang p'ing; ti san chiao shang shêng; ti ssu chiao ch'ü shêng.
the third the "rising" tone; and the fourth the "receding" tone.

7. F. Wo t'ing shuo, shuo Chung Kuo hua yu wu shêng, tui pu tui.
7. I have heard that there are five tones in Chinese, is that correct?

8. C. Yeh pu nêng shuo pu tui, yin wei yu ti ti fang, t'a mên chia shang i ko ju shêng.
8. I can't say that that is wrong, for in some places they add an "entering" tone.

"Yu ti ti fang"—some places. "Yu ti"—there are some. (See 12 below.)

9. F. Hsüeh Chung Kuo hua, yung shih mo fa tzu hao ni.
9. What method of learning Chinese can you recommend? (lit. "use what method is a good one?")

10. C. Ch'ing i wei Chung Kuo jên tang hsien shêng, ni i chü i chü ti kên cho t'a nien.
10. Invite a Chinese to act as your teacher, and read after him sentence by sentence.

Note "tang"—to act as, to be.
"I chü i chü ti"—sentence by sentence, a very common idiom.

11. F. Wo kên cho t'a nien ti shih hou, chin hsin ti hsiao fa t'a ti k'ou yin, tui pu tui.
11. And I suppose you would recommend me to do my utmost to copy his pronunciation as I follow him in the reading?
8. 入  Ju.⁴  Name of entering tone, to enter.

10. 當  Tang.¹  To represent, act as, be, regard as.

11. 效  Hsiao.⁴  To imitate, copy.
    效法  Hsiao-fa.  To imitate.
    口音  K’ou-yin.  Pronunciation (lit. mouth-sound).
12. C. Tui la. Pu kuo shih  12. Yes that is right. But yu ti jên shuo some speak the kuo yü, yeh yu National language, nu shao ti jên while there are a shuo t'ü hua. good many others who speak local dia-

"Kuo yü", the National language, used on the radio, and now rapidly becoming current throughout China, and destined gradually to eliminate the confusion of dialects, which are numerous.

"T'ü hua", the patois, or local dialect of the common people.

13. F. Wai kuo jên hai  13. I suppose it is better for shih hsüeh kuo foreigners to learn yü hao, shih pu the National lan-

shih. guage, isn't it?

14. C. Pu ts'o. Hsien tsai  14. Yes, the National lan-
ko ch'ü tou t'ung guage is now current hsing kuo yü. everywhere.

"Ko ch'ü t'ung hsing"—current everywhere, lit. every place through gocs.

15. F. Ling chiao hsien  15. May I ask what is shêng, hsieh the best kind of pen Chung Kuo tzu, to use for writing shih yung na Chinese characters?
yang ti pi hao.

16. C. Hsieh Chung Kuo  16. It is best to use the hair tzu, hai shih yung brush for writing mao pi ti hao. Chinese.

17. F. Yung kang pi hsing  17. Will a steel pen do?
pu hsing.

18. C. Hsing shih hsing,  18. Yes, but it is not so pu kuo mei yu good as a hair brush. mao pi hao.

"Hsing shih hsing", another instance of "qualifying" influence on the verb by duplication of it, lit. doing will do, but.
12. **語** Yü.³ Words.
     **國語** Kuo-yü. The Chinese national language.
     **土話** T'ū-hua. Dialects (lit. earth-words).

19. **F. Wo k’an chien kuo** 19. I have seen some people
   yu jên yung ch’ien using pencils (for
   pi. this purpose).

   "Yu jên"—some, short for "yu ti jen". (See 8 and 12 above.)

20. **C. Yu ti shih, pu** 20. That is possible. But
   kuo wo hai shih I must still exhort
   ch’üan ni, ts’ung you to use the brush
   ch’i t’ou yao from the start.
   yung mao pi.

   "Yu ti shih ", yet another illustration of "yu ti ", meaning some,
   lit. there are some (instances of this) affair, sort of thing.

21. **F. Ling chiao, ling** 21. Thanks for your ad-
   chiao. vice.

   "Ling chiao ", another way of expressing thanks, lit. I have
   received instruction (from you).
20. 勸
起頭
Ch’üan. Exhort, encourage.
Ch’i-t’ou. The beginning, start.
DIALOGUE No. 31

Asking a Favour. Time Idioms

Two friends, A and B

1. A. Wo ch'ing hsien shêng fei hsin, t'i wo tso i chien shih.
1. I shall be very grateful if you will do something for me.

2. B. Pu k'o ch'i. Ni yao wo t'i ni tso shih mo.
2. Don't stand on ceremony. What do you want me to do for you?

3. A. Wo hsiang lai, mei yu hsiang hsien shêng ch’iu kuo shih mo.
3. Hitherto I have not asked you for any favours.

“Hsiang . . . ch’iu”—ask of . . . lit. appeal towards . . . "Hsiang" has the meaning of "towards".

4. B. Hsien tsai, ni chiu ching yao shih mo.
4. What really do you want me to do now?

5. A. P’an wang chiang lai hsien shêng t’i pa wo ti êrh tsu.
5. I hope that you will take a personal interest in my son’s future.

6. B. T’a hsien tsai tso shih mo shih.
6. What does he do now?

7. A. Ts’ung ch’ien t’a tsai pan kung shih, tang shu chi.
7. He was a clerk in the office formerly.
3. 向来  Hsiang-lai.  Hitherto, up to now.
求  Ch’iu.  To implore.

4. 究竟  Chiu.  Finally, after all, but, etc.
竟  Ching.  Really, finally.
究竟  Chiu-ching.  Really, at bottom.

5. 将来  Chiang-lai.  In the future.
提  T’i.  Mention, raise a matter.
拔  Pa.  Raise, help up.
提拔  T’i-pa.  Help along, promote, raise.
儿子  Erh-tzu.  Son.

7. 從前  Ts’ung-ch’ien.  Formerly.
室  Shih.  Room, house, office, bureau.
辦公室  Pan-kung-shih.  Office, bureau (lit. transact public (affairs) room).
書記  Shu-chi.  Secretarial assistant, clerk.
8. B. Wei shih mo t'a yao ling wai chao kung tso.

9. A. Ch'i ch'u ti shih hou, t'a men tui t'a hên hao, i hou chiu chien chien ti lêng tan ch'i lai la.

10. B. T'a mên tui tai t'a ti t'ai tu, kai pien, pi ting yu i ko yüan ku.

---

11. A. T'a mên i ch'ien tai t'a hou, i hou tai t'a po, mei yu shih mo tao li.

12. B. Yeh hsü t'a mên ching chi shang, yu k'un nan pa.

"Ching chi shang"—in the matter of economics. In Chinese the tendency is to use "shang", which literally means "on", in expressions of this kind. We should say "in".

13. A. Hsien shêng shuo ti tui. So i t'a mên chien shao la t'a ti hsin shui.

"Hsin-shui"—salary, lit. firewood and water, the "fee" formerly paid by pupils to their Chinese teacher, an honorarium.

14. B. T'a mên hai mei yu ta fa t'a tsou pa.

14. I suppose they haven't dismissed him yet?
8. 工作 Kung-tso. Work, task, labour.

9. 對 Tui. Treatment, behave towards.
   漸 Chien. Gradually.
   冷淡 Lêng-tan. Coolly, uninterested (cold-weak).

10. 待 Tai. To treat; to behave.
    態度 T’ai-tu. Attitude.
    改變 Kai-pien. To change, alter.
    必定 Pi-ting. Must, of necessity.
    緣 Yüan. Cause, reason.
    故 Ku. Cause, reason.

11. 厚 Hou. Generous, thick.
    薄 Po. Pao. Mean, stingy, thin.

    困 K’un. Straitened, distressed.
    困難 K’un-nan. Special difficulties, straits.

13. 減 Chien. To reduce, diminish.
    薪 Hsin. Fuel, firewood, used with the next.
15. A. Tao hsien tsai hai mei yu. K’ung p’a pu chiu, t’a mên chiu i ting pu yao t’a liao.

"Tao hsien tsai"—up to now, lit. arrive present. "Hsien tsai" is present, of time.

16. B. Chi jan ju tz’u, wo yeh pu nêng pu pang mang.

"Ju tz’u"—like this.

"Pu nêng pu ...", an illustration of the common use of the double negative to impart strong positive emphasis.

17. A. Ch’ien wan, ch’ing hsien shêng fei hsin.

"Ch’ien wan"—see Vocabulary.


"Li so tang jan ti", an ornate way of saying "li tang"—what one ought to do.

19. A. T’a yao shih chiang hai, chao tao i ko hao shih ch’ing, chên shih t’o hsien shêng ti fu.

"T’o ... fu", a polite and circumlocutory phrase for thanks, lit. I am indebted to your favour for ...


20. No no, not at all. Take care (lit. go slowly).
15. 不久 不要  
Pu-chiu. Before long, soon (not-long-time).  
Pu-yao. Dismiss (not-want).

16. 既  
Chi⁴ (jan). Since, seeing that.

17. 千萬  
Ch’ien-wan. By all means (lit. thousand-ten-thousand).
DIALOGUE No. 32

Between Chinese Official (O) and an English visitor (E) on local education, crops, public health, etc.

1. E. Hsien shêng hui shuo Ying kuo hua ma.
   1. Can you speak English?

2. O. Hui i liang chü, t’ai pu kou yung. Hsien shêng hui chiang Chung kuo hua ma.
   2. Just a few words, totally inadequate. Can you speak (intelligibly) in Chinese?

"I liang chü"—a few words, lit. one or two sentences. "I pan chü", a sentence and a half, is also used.
"Ta pu kou yung", or "t’ai pu kou yung", a good instance of what is called "grammar by position." The "ta" or "t’ai", being where it is in the sentence, has the meaning of "extremely". If the sentence were "pu ta kou yung", the "ta" would not have such emphatic significance. The latter sentence means "not quite enough for use", which is very different from "entirely inadequate".

3. E. Wo chêng tsai hsüeh ni, hai pu ta hui.
   3. I am just learning, and can speak little as yet.

"Chêng tsai hsüeh ni"—I am studying it, with the sense of not having got very far, only just beginning, etc. The "ni" is practically equivalent to a full stop.

4. O. Hsien shêng hên chih tao pi kuo ti fêng su.
   4. You understand (are well acquainted with) our manners and customs.

"Fêng su", or "fêng t’u jên ch’ing"—local ("t’u") manners and feelings ("jên ch’ing"). It is important to "make allowances" in China for circumstances. That is what "jên ch’ing" implies. The Chinese, according to their Confucian ethical philosophy, never administer justice nor pronounce judgment strictly according to written law. They always consider a man’s circumstances.
3. 正在  Chêng-tsai.  In process of doing something.

4. 風俗  Fêng-su.  Customs of the people.
5. E. Chih tao ti yu hsien, wo lai ling chiao, ling chiao.
6. O. Hsien shêng t’ai ch’ien hsü, t’ai k’o ch’i.
7. E. Wo lai ta t’ing kuei hsien jên min ti ch’ing hsing.

"Ta t’ing"—to inquire.

8. O. Hên hao. Hsien shêng hsiang chih tao na i fang mien ti shih ch’ing.
9. E. Hsien t’an chiao yu i fang mien.


"Mei ko", or "mei i ko"—each.

11. E. Hsüeh hsiao li, yeh shou nü shêng ma.
12. O. Pu ts’o. Ko hsüeh hsiao, tou shih nan nü tsai i k’uai èrh, shang hsüeh.

"Ko hsüeh hsiao"—every school.

5. In a limited way. I have come to learn from you.
6. You are too humble-minded, too courteous altogether.
7. I have come to inquire about the people in your district.
8. Very good. On what particular aspect of their life would you like information?
9. Let us begin by discussing education.
10. In each village there is a lower primary school, and in each of the bigger market towns there is a higher primary. In the county town there is a middle school.
11. Are girls received in the schools?
12. Yes, every school is co-educational (lit. male and female students study together).
5. 限  
Hsien.¹ Limit, boundary, to fix.

6. 謙  
Ch’ien.¹ Humble, modest.  
識虛  
Ch’ien-hsü. Modest, unassuming.

9. 育  
Yü.⁴ Rear, nurture.
教育  
Chiao-yü. Education.
方面  
Fang-mien. Aspect of a subject, side, aspect.

10. 初  
Ch’u.¹ The beginning, primary.
初等  
Ch’u-têng. Primary grade.
鎮  
Chên ⁴ (tzu). Market town, mart, to guard, repress.
高等  
Kao-têng. Higher grade, higher primary.
中學  
Chung-hsüeh. Middle school.
校  
Hsiao.⁴ School.

11. 生  
Shêng.¹ Raw, unfamiliar, used for students.
13. E. Lao pai hsing tou shih tzu ma.  
13. What about the older folk, are they literate?

14. O. Shih tzu ti pu to. Chin nien yao t’i ch’ang i ko shih tzu yün tung.  
14. Very few are literate. We are promoting a literacy campaign this year. 
“Yün tung”—a movement of any kind, campaign.

15. E. Chiao shih, shih tsai na’rh pi yeh ti.  
15. And your teachers, where have they graduated?

16. O. Chiao shih, shih pên shêng shih fan hsüeh hsiao pi yeh ti to.  
16. Most of the teachers are graduates of the provincial training college. 
Note the use of “pên” for “this”, “our”, “native”, etc.

17. E. Yeh yu nû chiao shih ma.  
17. And do you use women teachers?

18. O. Yu shih yu, pu kuo pu to.  
18. Yes, but not many.

19. E. Chin nien chuang chia tsêm-mo yang.  
19. How are the crops this year?

20. O. Chin nien nien t’ou hên fêng shêng, pai hsing tou hên p’ing ching.  
20. The harvest is excellent this year, and the people generally are contented (lit. quiet, calm).

21. E. Chê pie’rh chung ti shih shih mo chuang chia to.  
21. What kind of crops are grown here mostly.
13. 識字  Shih-tzu. Literate, literacy (know-characters).

14. 倡  Ch’ang.ª To lead.
    提倡  T’i-ch’ang. To promote, lead, take the initiative.

15. 教師  Chiao-shih. Teacher.
    畢  Pi.ª Finish, end.
    業  Yeh.ª Course, occupation, profession.
    畢業  Pi-yeh. Graduate from a course, school, college.

16. 範  Fan.ª Model, pattern.
    省  Shêng." Province.

19. 莊  Chuang.¹ A farm, farmstead, the fields.
    稼  Chia.ª Grain, crops, to sow.
    莊稼  Chuang-chia. Crops, growing grain.

    豐盛  Fêng.¹ Luxuriant, flourishing, abundant.
    靜  Shêng." Abundant, flourishing.
    平靜  Ching." Placid, calm.
    P’ing-ching. Quiet, undisturbed.
22. O. Mai tzu to. Pu kuo yeh yu hsiao mi, yu mai, mien hua, han yen. 22. Wheat in the main. But millet, oats, cotton and tobacco are also found.

23. E. Na mo, pai hsing na liang, pu fei shih. 23. In that case you have no difficulty in getting the people to pay their taxes?

"Pu fei shih"—not difficult, lit. not expend activity. "Liang" originally means "grain", but as taxes were usually paid in grain the word came to have the meaning of taxes.

24. O. Yeh hên nan shuo, pu kuo pi pieh ti hsiên fên ch'iang. 24. I can hardly say that. But (in that respect) we are better off than other districts.

25. E. Kuei ch'u jên min, yeh hên chiang chiu wei shêng ma. 25. And are the people of your area interested in public health?

"Chiang chiu" here means "to be particular about". (See Dial. 27, sen. 21.)

26. O. Pu ta chiang chiu, ch'ang ch'ang fa shêng shih chêng. 26. They are not very particular. We have frequent outbreaks of (infectious) diseases.

27. E. Chê pie'rh yu t'u fei mei yu. 27. Are there any bandits about here?

28. O. Mei yu. Chê pie'rh ti ching ch'a, ho 28. No. The police and military officials loy-
油麥 Yu-mai. Oats.
米 Mi.³ Millet, the grains in general.
小米 Hsiao-mi. Millet.
棉 Mien.⁴ Cotton.
花 Hua.¹ Flower.
棉花 Mien-hua. Cotton, in growth, or raw.
旱 Han.⁴ Dry, used with the next.
旱烟 Han-yen. Tobacco.

23. 納 Na.⁴ To pay, take, receive, used with the next.
糧 Liang.² Taxes, rations, grains.
納糧 Na-liang. To pay taxes.

24. 縣分 Hsien-fên. Administrative division, county.

26. 時 Shih.² Time.
症 Chêng.⁴ Disease.
時症 Shih Cheng. Epidemic.

27. 匪 Fei.³ Worthless, wrong, bandits, rebels.
土匪 T’u-fei. Local banditti.

28. 警 Ching.¹ Alarm, startle, watch.
察 Ch’a.² To examine, investigate.
chün kuan tou ch'ihn ch'ih.

ally discharge the duties of their office here.

29. E. Wo hsiang kuei hsien pu k'uei shih mu fan hsien.

I consider you need not be diffident to regard your district as a model.

30. O. Kuo chiang, kuo chiang.

"Kuo chiang", lit. over-praise.
28. 警察  Ching-ch’a. The police.
    畫職  Chin. To fulfil, exhaust possibilities.
    畫職  Chih. Public office, appointment.
    畫職  Chin-chih. To fulfil the duties of one’s office.

29. 恰  K’uei. Be diffident about.
    模範  Mu. Mo. Model, pattern.
    模範  Mu-fan. Model, pattern.
DIALOGUE No. 33

Doctor and Patient

Doctor, D.  Patient, P.

1. P. Ni yao shih yüan i, chiu k’o i i chih wo ti ping.
   1. If you were willing to heal me, (I feel that) you could do so.

2. D. Sui jan wo yüan i, hai shih pu nêng chih ni ti ping.
   2. I cannot heal you, although I am willing to do so.

"Sui jan... hai". Note the construction,"sui jan", although,"hai", yet.
Note the use of "jan" with "sui", although, and "chi", since, to complete the adverbial form.

3. P. Ni chi shih pu nêng chih wo ti ping, ni kai chieh shao wo kei pieh ti tai fu.
   3. Since you cannot heal me, you will surely (ought to) introduce me to some other doctor.

4. D. Wo yeh kei ni hsieh chieh shao hsin, yeh sung ni tao tai fu na li ch’ü.
   4. I will give you a letter of introduction, and also take you to the doctor myself.

"Yeh... yeh"—both... and". The alternative form, "ping ch’ieh", is fairly common amongst educated people.

5. P. Chê yang tso, i ting tui wo hên yu i, k’o shih wo pu hsiang ch’ü.
   5. That would certainly be of advantage to me, but all the same I am disinclined to go.

6. D. Wei shih mo ni pu hsiang ch’ü.
   6. And why are you disinclined to go?

7. P. Yin wei wo pu jên shih t’a, ho t’a pu shu hsi.
   7. Because I don’t know him, I am not well acquainted with him.
1. 治病 Chih.⁴ To cure, treat (medically, etc.).
   Ping.⁴ Disease, illness, sick.

3. 該介 Chieh.⁴ Introduce, announce.
   紹 Shao.⁴ Introduce, hand down.
   介紹 Chieh-shao. Introduce, as one friend to another.

5. 益 I.² Benefit, advantage.

6. 為什麼 Wei-shih-mo. Why?

7. 習 Hsi.² Versed in, familiar, practised.
   熟習 Shu-hsi. Intimate, well acquainted.
8. "D. Ni tsung jan ho t'a pu shu, ni yeh k'o i fang hsin, yin wei wo chih tao t'a shih i ko hao tai fu, tan pao t'a nêng i chih ni."

"Tsung jan" is not as common as "sui jan" (see 2 above), but it permits of a slightly different emphasis from it. "Tsung jan" is used when you want to say "but supposing that be so", "allowing for that", etc.

9. "P. Ni chi jan chê yang ti ch'üan wo, wo chiu tsun ming chiu shih la." 9. Since you urge me to this extent, I am ready to do as you say.

10. "D. Ni chê yang ti t'ing wo ch'üan, wo yeh hên kao hsing." 10. I am delighted that you should take my advice so readily.

11. "P. Wo pu tê pu chao cho ni so shuo ti ch'ü tso." 11. I cannot do other than act as you suggest.

12. "D. Ni yao hsiao hsin, pu yao pa wo kei ni ti hsin tiu la." 12. Take care not to lose the letter I have given you.

"Wo kei ni ti hsin"—the letter which I gave you.
The "so", relative pronoun, is understood.

13. "P. Pu p'a, wo pu hui tiu tiao ti." 13. Have no fear, it is out of the question for me to lose that.

"Hui" means able to, so the sense is "I simply cannot lose it".

14. "D. Yao shih ni tieh tao la, chiu pu kan tan pao tsên yang." 14. But in the event of your falling one could not be sure about that.
8. 緊 Tsung⁴ (jan). Although, lax.
放心 Fang-hsin. Don’t worry!
因為 Yin-wei. Because, for, on account of.
擔 Tan.¹ Undertake, carry, used with the next.
擔保 Tan-pao. Guarantee, stand surety for.

9. 遵 Tsun.¹ To accord with, follow, obey.

10. 聽我勸 T’ing-wo-ch’üan. Follow my advice.
興 Hsing.¹ Elated, rejoice.
高興 Kao-hsing. Elated, highly pleased.

13. 掉 Tiao.⁴ To let fall, fall.
丢失 Tiu-tiao. To let fall, lose.

14. 跌 Tieh.¹ To stumble, fall.
跌倒 Tieh-tao. To fall.
15. P. Hsin yao shih tiao hsia lai la, wo chiu kan k’uai pa t’a, shih ch’i lai.
15. If the letter were to fall I should pick it up again straight away.
16. P. (cont.) Tai fu lai tao chê li, huo cho wo tao t’a na li ch’ü, pu shih i yang ti ma.
16. Isn’t it all the same whether the doctor comes here, or whether I go to him?
17. D. Pu i yang, yin wei t’a na li yu yao p’in ho yao pu.
17. Not at all, because he has medicines and dressings there.
18. P. K’o shih tai fu hai mei yu kei wo k’an mo, yeh mei yu yung wen tu piao, liang.
18. But, doctor, you have not yet taken my pulse, nor used the thermometer to take my temperature.
19. D. Ni yeh mei yu kao su wo, ni shên shang na’erh t’êng la. Wok’an ni jê tu ping pu kao. Shên ch’u shê t’ou lai, k’an i k’an.
19. Neither have you told me where you feel the pain (lit. on your body where pain). I don’t think your temperature is high. But put out your tongue and let me see it.
20. P. T’êng shih tu tzu t’êng la, t’ou yeh t’êng la.
20. I have stomach ache, also headache.
21. D. Ta hsiao pien tsêmmo yang, t’ung pu t’ung.
21. What about your bowels and urine, are they all right? (lit. free not free).
22. P. Hsiao pien t’ung la, ta pien pu t’ung.
22. Urination is all right, but my bowels are constipated.
15. Shih.² To pick up.

17. Yüeh. Yao.⁴ Medicine, drugs.  
    P'ìn.³ Sort, kind, class, character.  
    Yüeh-p'ìn. Medicines, as a whole.  
    Yao-pu. Bandages, lint, etc.

18. Mo.⁴ The pulse.  
    K'an-mo. To take the pulse.  
    Wên-tu-piao. Thermometer.

19. T'êng.² Pain, to be in pain.  
    Shen.¹ To extend, put out.

21. Ta-pien. To pass a stool (big-convenience).  
    Hsiao-pien. To urinate (little-convenience).
23. **D. Na mo, wo kei ni** p’ei hsieh yao. **Ni pu yao ho** nung ch’a, ch’ang ch’ang ho tan ch’a pa.

Then I will make you up a purge. And don’t drink strong tea. Always take weak tea.

Note the use of “nung” and “tan” to express strong and weak of liquids. “Yen” is also used for “strong” of liquids.

24. **P. Ch’ing tai fu kei wo** p’e i fu wan yao pa. Wo pu nêng ch’ih yao fên.

And doctor, I should like you to make me up a dose of pills. I can’t take powders.
    瀉  Hsieh. To purge, drain, diarrhoea.

24.  P’ei. To mix, make up, as medicines.
    副  Fu. A dose, classifier of medicine doses.
    丸  Wan. Pill, pills.
    粉  Fên. Medicinal powder, flour, meal.
DIALOGUE No. 34

On Personal Characteristics and Relationships

Two friends, A and B

1. A. Chao hsien shêng ti p'î ch'i ju ho.

2. B. T'a shih i ko hsin p'îng, ch'i ho ti jên.

3. A. T'îng shuo t'a ti t'ai t'ai ti p'î ch'i pu hao.

4. B. Ni shuo ti tui, tan shih t'a ti chang fu, kei t'a li i ko hao pang yang.

5. A. I ko jên, yao shih pu jên ch'i, ch'ang ch'ang hui fa shêng ma fan.

Note the use of "fa shêng" in the sense of create, produce, make, etc.

5. If a person cannot control his temper, it is a constant source of trouble.

6. B. Pu kuo Chao hsien shêng shih ko hao jên, pu yüan i chia li pien fa shêng lo so.

6. But Mr. Chao is a good man, and is anxious that no trouble should arise in his home.

7. A. T'a mên chia li pien, ta kuo chia mei yu.

7. Have they ever come to blows at home?
VOCABULARY OF DIALOGUE No. 34

1. 脾 P'i.² Spleen, stomach, disposition.
脾氣 P'i-ch'i. Disposition, temper.

4. 丈 Chang.⁴ Husband.
丈夫 Chang-fu. Husband.
榜 Pang.³ Example, pattern.
榜樣 Pang-yang. Example, pattern.

5. 忍 Jên.³ Endure, repress, restrain.
忍氣 Jên-ch'i. Self-control, keep one's temper.
麻 Ma.² Used with the next for trouble.
煩 Fan.² Trouble, annoyance, annoy.

6. 嚷 So.¹ To incite, discord, mischief.

7. 架 Chia.¹ Blows, squabble.
打架 Ta-chia. To come to blows, wrangle.
8. **B. Mei yu, tan shih yu ti shih hou, mien pu liao ch’i i tie’rh ch’ung t’u.**

“Mien pu liao”, another illustration of the use of “pu liao” to express impossibility, impossible to avoid, unavoidable.

9. **A. Yu ti shih hou, t’ing chien t’a mën ta shêng ch’ao tsui.**

9. Sometimes I hear them shouting and wrangling.

10. **B. Ai ya, chê shih chia li mien ch’ang chien ti shih.**

10. Alas, this sort of thing is common in home life.

11. **A. Hsien shêng k’an, tsên yang nêng pa chê chung shih chien shao.**

11. How do you think that this sort of thing might become less frequent?

“Nêng-kou”—can, able to—is often used as an alternative for “nêng” alone.

12. **B. I ko jën yao shih chiao ao, ch’ang ch’ang k’an pu ch’i pieh jën.**

12. If a man is proud he is prone to despise (look down upon) others.

13. **A. I ko jën yao shih ch’ien pei, chiu pu hui fa shêng chê yang ti shih ch’ing.**

13. A humble-minded man will never (lit. is unable to) cause this kind of trouble.

14. **B. T’a ti t’ai t’ai, tsung hsi huan t’an lun jën chia ti ch’ang tuan.**

14. His wife must take pleasure in talking about the faults and failures of other people.
    衝 Ch’ung.¹ To clash, dash against, collide.
    突 T’u.⁴ Rush against.
    衝突 Ch’ung-t’u. Personal differences, quarrels.

9. 吵 Ch’ao.³ Altercation, row, noise.
    嘴 Tsui.³ Lips.
    吵嘴 Ch’ao-tsui. Wrangle, quarrel.

11. 種 Chung.³ Kind, sort.

12. 骄 Chiao.¹ Proud, arrogant.
    傲 Ao. Ngao.⁴ Haughty, proud.
    骄傲 Chiao-ao. Proud, haughty, arrogant.
    看不起 K’an-pu-ch’i. To despise, look down on (look-not-rise).
    別人 Pich-jên. Others, other people.

13. 卑 Pei.¹ Low.
    謙卑 Ch’ien-pei. Humble, modest.

14. 談論 T’an-lun. Discuss, talk about.
    長短 Ch’ang-tuan. Merits and shortcomings (long-short).
15. A. Na mo, wo hsiang t’a ti chang fu ho t’a pu yung i ch’u.

"Ch’u" has a special meaning of "to live together", "get on with one".

15. In that case I imagine her husband must find it no easy task to get on with her.

16. B. Pu ts’o, tan shih t’a chin liang ti jên nai, pu jo t’a.

16. That is so, but her husband endeavours to be patient, doing his utmost not to provoke her.

17. A. Chao hsien shêng pi ting shih i ko ts’ung ming t’ung ta ti jên.

"Ts’ung ming t’ung ta"—an enlightened and perspicacious man.

17. Then Mr. Chao must be a very intelligent and experienced man.

18. B. Tui la, t’a shên t’ung Ju hsüeh.

"Ju" is the classical name for Confucianism, sometimes spoken of as "Ju-chiao", or as in the text, "Ju-hsüeh".

"Shên t’ung"—deep and thorough.
15. 處  Ch’u.²  To live with.
不
容
易
處  Pu-yung-i-ch’u.  Not easy to get on with.

16. 盡 量 的  Chin-liang-ti.  Do one’s utmost (to exhaust one’s capacity).

忍  耐  Jên-nai.  Be patient, put up with, endure.

惹  Jo.³  To provoke.

17. 聰  Ts’ung.¹  Intelligent, understanding, clever.

明  Ts’ung-ming.  Intelligent, clever.

通  T’ung.³  Through, used with the next.

達  Ta.²  Penetrate, inform.

通  達  T’ung-ta.  Well informed, perspicacious.

18. 深  Shen.¹  Deep, profound, versed in.

儒  Ju.³  Confucian, learned, scholarly.

儒  學  Ju-hsüeh.  The Confucian teaching, Confucianism.
DIALOGUE No. 35

Discussion between Master (M) and Servant (S) on scissors, the tailor, looking for someone, etc.

1. M. Na tao tzu lai, ko tiao chê i t'iao shêng tzu. 1. Bring a knife to cut this piece of string.

2. S. Chê t'iao shêng tzu t'ai ts'u, yung tao tzu ko pu tuan. 2. This piece of string is too thick for a knife to cut.

Note that "ts'u", thick, and "hsi", thin, are used of round long things like string, pillars, etc., while "hou", thick, and "po", thin, are used of flat objects.

3. M. Na mo, ling wai chao i t'iao pi chiao hsi ti shêng tzu, huo shih na chien tao lai, chiao i chiao. 3. In that case, either find a piece of finer string, or bring the scissors to cut it.

"Pi chiao . . . hsi ti"—comparatively fine, finer.

4. S. Ts'ai fêng pa chien tzu chieh ch'û la. 4. The tailor has borrowed the scissors (and taken them away).

5. M. T'a chieh la wo mên ti chien tzu ch'û tso shih mo. 5. What has he borrowed our scissors for?

Note "tso shih-mo" at the end of this sentence is equivalent to "why"? "He has borrowed our scissors . . . to do what?"

6. S. T'a shuo t'a tzu chi ti chien tzu t'ai tun, tê mo i mo. 6. He says his scissors are too blunt and in need of grinding.
1. 割
   Ko.¹ To cut.
   割掉 Ko-tiao. To cut off (cut-drop).
   絮 Shêng³ (tzu). Rope, string, cord.
2. 斷
   Tuan.⁴ To cut off, break.
   割不斷 Ko-pu-tuan. Can't cut it.

3. 細
   Hsi.⁴ Fine, opposite of thick, or coarse.
   剪 Chien¹ (tzu). Scissors.
   剪刀 Chien-tao. Scissors.
   絞 Chiao.³ To cut with scissors, twist, crosswise.

6. 鈍
   Tun.⁴ Dull, blunt.
   磨 Mo.² To grind, rub, mill.
7. M. Ts'ai fêng shih pu shih hsien ts'ai kei wo mên tso i fu.

7. Isn't the tailor making some clothes for us at present?

Notice "shih pu shih" coming at the beginning of a compound question. It serves to emphasise the action as continuing in the present.

8. S. Shih ti. T'a shih ts'ai kei t'ai t'ai ts'ai tuan wai i, ho ch'ang p'ao.

8. He is making a coatee and coat for Madame.

9. M. Wo chih tao t'ai t'ai chi yü hsiang ch'üan tuan wai i, so i t'a chieh chien tao, yeh yu li yu.

9. I know that Madame is very urgently wanting to wear the coatee, and so he had some good reason for borrowing the scissors.

10. S. K'o shih yu i chien; k'ung p'a ts'ai fêng pa chien tao, liu ch'i lai la.

10. But there is just this point; suppose the tailor were to keep our scissors?

"K'o shih yu i chien", used when interposing a qualification to views expressed.

11. M. Na suan pu liao shih mo, tsui yao chin ti shih yao t'a tsao tsao ti pa tuan wai i tso hao, chiao t'ai t'ai hsi huan.

11. That is of small moment. The most important thing is for him to get that coatee finished early, to please Madame.

12. M. (cont.) Ni tsêm-mo pu tsao kei wo shuo.

12. But why didn't you tell me before?
9. 於 Yü.² In, at, on, etc.
急於 Chi-yü. Anxious about, in haste about.
由 Yu.² Reason, cause.
理由 Li-yu. The reason why.

10. 留起來 Liu-ch'i-lai. To retain, keep.

11. 算不了 Suan-pu-liao. Of no importance or account.
13. S. Yin wei wo pu chih tao nin tsai na li.
   Because I did not know where you were.
   Note use of "nin", a polite form of "ni", the second personal pronoun.

14. M. Pu shih yin wei ni t'ai lan, mei yu yung hsin chao wo pa.
   Isn't it (rather) because you are lazy, and have not tried to find me?

15. S. Pu shih ti, wo shih tsai chao pu cho hsien sheng.
   No not that. I really could not find you.

16. M. Wo ping mei yu li k'ai che ko ti fang, ts'em mo ni shuo chao pu cho wo ni.
   But I haven't left this place, how can you say you couldn't find me?

17. S. Na tao ch'i kuai, wo tao ch'u chao nin, na'ehr yeh chao pu cho.
   That really is strange. I looked everywhere for you, but couldn't find you.

"Na'ehr yeh . . . pu"—nowhere, not anywhere.

   Enough of this. Get on with your job.
14. 用心 Yung-hsin. To exert oneself, mentally (use heart).

15. 找不着 Chao-pu-cho. Cannot find (seek not get).

16. 離開 Li-k’ai. To depart, leave, take one’s leave.

17. 奇怪 Ch’i. ² Strange, wonderful, rare.
    Kuai. ⁴ Extraordinary, unusual, strange, blame.
    到處 Tao-ch’u. Everywhere.

18. 罷了 Pa⁴-liao. To finish, that will do! say no more.
EXERCISE No. 36

Some Useful Idiomatic Phrases

1. Pa ni mên ti shu ta k'âi.
   1. Open your books.

2. K'an ti chi chang ti chi chieh.
   2. What chapter and verse shall we find? (lit. look at, with a view to reading).

   3. To what page have you read?

4. Mei ko hsüeh shêng, tou yao nien ti êrh shih wu yeh ti, ti êrh chang, ti i chieh.
   4. Each student must read chap. two, verse one, on page 25.

" Ko"—each, every, followed by " tou", " tu"—all.

5. So yu ti hsien shêng tou yao tao hui.
   5. All the teachers must come to the meeting.

" Tao hui"—come to the meeting—is really equal to our be present, attend.

6. Wo ho ni mên tsai i ch'i ti shih hou, ni mên yao chin liang ti fa piao ni mên ti i chien.
   6. Express your opinions as far as you can, while I am here with you.

7. T'a ho wo mên t'ung hsing, tso wo mên ti ling tao.
   7. He is going with us, to be our leader.

" Tso" has the same sense as " tang", viz., to act as, to be.

8. Wo tsai chu wei mien ch'ien shuo chê yang ti hua, shih pu p'ei ti.
   8. I am unworthy (not fit to) to say this kind of thing in your presence.

" Chu wei"—all (you) gentlemen. Used when addressing an audience.
VOCABULARY OF EXERCISE No. 36

1. 打開 Ta-k’ai. To open, as of books.
2. 章 Chang.¹ Chapter, essay.
   節 Chieh.² Verse, section.
3. 頁 Yeh.⁴ Page, leaf of a book.

5. 所有的 So-yu-ti. All that there are.
   會 Hui.⁴ Meeting, conference, association.

6. 在一起 Tsai-i-ch’i. Together.
   發表 Fa-piao. To make known.
   意見 I-chien. Opinions, ideas.

7. 導 Tao.³ To lead.
   領導 Ling-tao. To lead, a leader.

8. 諸 Chu.¹ All (precedes nouns).
   配 P’ei.⁴ Match, be worthy, be equal to.
9. The officers go in and out amongst the troops.

10. T’a tsai lu p’ang kuan k’an.
10. He was looking on from the side of the road (an onlooker).

11. The house is exactly opposite.

12. Ling lu ti, tsai ch’ien mie’rh tsou.
12. The guide goes ahead.

13. The escort goes behind.

14. Friends advance shoulder to shoulder (side by side).

15. Ni chan tsai tang chung pa.
15. Stand in the middle.

16. Pu yao wang i k’uai érh chi.
16. Don’t crowd together.

17. Ta chia yao san k’ai.
17. Let all scatter.

“Ta chia”, a common expression for “all”, when referring to persons.

18. It would be better if you moved apart a little.

19. Pi tz’u jang pu.
19. To make concessions on both sides (lit. mutually recede).

“Pi tz’u”, lit. that, this, is the most usual expression for mutually.

20. Ta chia ch’ien chin pa. 20. Let all advance.
9. 長官 軍隊
Chang-kuan. Officials, officers.
Chün-tui. Soldiers, military.

10. 旁 観
P'ang. The side.
Kuan. To look on, observe.

13. 護 護送
Hu. To protect, guard.
Hu-sung. To escort, for protection.

14. 排 並排
P'ai. In rows, ranks, arrange, abreast.
Ping-p'ai. Shoulder to shoulder, in line.

15. 當中
Tang-chung. The midst, in the centre.

16. 擠
Chi. To crowd together, to press.

17. 散 開
San. To scatter, disperse.
San-k'ai. To scatter, disperse, apart.

19. 彼 此 彼此 譲 譲步
Pi. That.
Tz'u. This.
Pi-tz'u. Mutual, mutually.
Jang. To concede, give way, yield.
Jang-pu. To make concessions, yield (give step).
21. Chê chi nien t’a chin la 21. He has made progress this last few years.


22. T’a ti mei mei t’ui la 22. His younger sister has retrogressed.

23. Kuan chang i chin lai, 23. As soon as the officials come in, let the whole group rise,
da chia chiu chan  doff hats and bow.
ch’i lai, t’o mao chû kung.

"I chin lai ... chiu"—as soon as ... come in ... (you will do this or that).
"Ch’ai" is a special term for taking off the hat or cap. But the usual expression for "taking off clothes", including caps and hats, is "t’o".

24. Hsiang tso hsiang yu, 24. As to whether we turn left or right it is the teacher’s orders that must be obeyed,
tou shih t’ing chiao shih ti ming ling.

25. I shih chu, san yao shu. 25. Clothes, food and shelter are the three important things.

26. Ch’uan tê nuan, ch’ih 26. To be warmly clad and té pao, shih jên jên well fed is the desire so yao.
of every man.

"Ch’ih tê pao"; cf. "ch’ih pao la"—I have eaten my fill—is not considered impolite as an expression of appreciation of a good meal.
21. 進歩  Chin-pu.  To advance, make progress.

22. 退  Tʻui. To retreat, retire, move back.
    退步  Tʻui-pu. Opposite of progress, to be retrograde.

23. 脫  Tʻo. To doff the hat, take off (clothes).
    鞠躬  Chū. To bow, bend the body.
    躬  Kung. The body, person.
    鞠躬  Chū-kung. To make a bow.

24. 左  Tso. Left.
    右  Yu. Right.
    命令  Ming-ling. Orders, commands.

25. 食  Shih. Food.
    樞  Shu. Cardinal, fundamental.

26. 暖  Nuan. Warm, genial.
    飽  Pao. Replete, full.
DIALOGUE No. 37

Two friends, A and B, take a Walk in the Country

1. A. Chìn t’iên kuo chieh, ko chi kuan fang chia, wo mên lû hsing hao pu hao.

"Kuo"—to pass—used of special days and occasions; e.g., "kuo nien" is to celebrate the (New) Year.

1. To-day is a public holiday, all public offices are closed. What do you say to a ramble?

2. B. Hên hao, wo mên hsia hsiang ch’ü, i t’ung ch’ih yeh ts’an.

"Hsia hsiang"; "hsia"—to go down (into the country).

2. Very good, let us go into the country and have a picnic meal together.


3. Splendid (lit. approved). I hope it will be warm.

3. B. Chiu shih yin t’ien, yeh pu yao chin. Tsui k’o p’a ti chiu shih shan tien, ta lei.

"Chiu shih . . . yeh"—even if . . . still, etc.
"K’o p’a ti", one way of expressing the passive voice; what is to be feared.

4. Even if it is overcast it doesn’t matter. What is most to be feared is thunder and lightning.

5. A. K’o shih hsia t’ien pu hui hsia hsüeh ti.

5. (One thing about it and that is) It is Summer and it won’t snow!

5. B. Pu ts’o, k’o shih nan pao pu hsia pao tzu.

6. True, but one can’t be certain it won’t hail.
VOCABULARY OF DIALOGUE No. 37

1. 節 Chieh.² Feast, festival.
   機 Chi.¹ Machine, organ of administration.
   關 Kuan.¹ Public office, administrative department.
   機關 Chi-kuan. Public offices, associations, etc.
   假 Chia.² Holiday.
   放假 Fang-chia. To close for holiday.
   旅行 Lū-hsing. To travel, go for a journey, picnic.
   2 鄉 Hsiang.¹ The country, countryside, rural.
   野 Yeh.³ Wild.
   餐 Ts’an.¹ A meal.

3. 贊 Tsan.⁴ Praise, approve.
   成 Ch’êng.¹ Approve.
   贊成 Tsan-ch’êng. To approve.
   4. 陰 Yin.¹ Dark, cloudy, overcast, the female principle.
   閃 Shan.³ Flash, lightning.
   閃電 Shan-tien. Lightning (flash electric).
   雷 Lei.² Thunder.

5. 雪 Hsüeh.³,⁵ Snow.

6. 電 Pao² (tzu). Hailstones.
7. A. Tung t'ien hsia shu-ang, shan shang ti shu to ma hao k'an.

8. B. Hao k'an shih hao k'an. Pu kuo ho kên hu li pie'r'h, tou chieh la tung, hên pu fang pien.

"Hên pu"—extremely un-; cf. "pu hên", not very, a difference of degree expressed by position of a word in the sentence.

9. A. K'o shih hsien tsai shih ch'iu t'ien, pu shih tung t'ien. Wo mên yu pu ta suan tso ch'uan, wo mên yao pu hsing.

9. B. Chin wan ti yûeh liang, ying kai shih yûan ti. T'ien ch'i ch'ing lang ti shih hou, hsing hsing yu kai to ma ti hao k'an.

10. It ought to be full moon tonight, and if the sky (weather) is clear, the stars ought also to be very beautiful.

11. A. Yao pu ch'i wu ts'ai hao. Hao pu hao wo mên hsien tsai chiu tsou pa.

11. It will be all right if there is no fog. What about making a start now?

12. B. K'oi. Ai ya. T'ien ch'i liang k'uai, ching chih yeh

12. Certainly. My! the day is cool, the scenery fine, the flowers are
7. 霜  Shuang.¹  Frost.
    樹  Shu.⁴  Tree.

8. 河  Ho.²  River.
    湖  Hu.²  Lake.
    凍  Tung.⁴  To freeze.
    方便  Fang-pien.  Convenient.

9. 秋  Ch’iu.¹  Autumn, harvest.

10. 月亮  Yüeh-liang.  The moon.
    朗  Lang.³  Clear, fine.
    圓  Yuan.²  Round, circle.

11. 霧  Wu.⁴  Mist.
    起霧  Chi’-wu.  To be misty, foggy.

    景  Ching.³  Fine, prospect.
hao, hua tou k’ai all in bloom, what a la, tsai ts’ao ti relief to be walking shang mien tsou, through the grassy to ma shu fu. meadows!

"To ma . . ."—how! when preceding an adjectival expression.

13. A. Ni k’an shan p’o Just look at the temples shang ti miao, on the hill slopes, shan ting shang and the pagoda on ti t’a, to ma hao the hill top, how k’an. lovely!

14. B. Wo mên shang miao 14. Let’s go up to the shang ch’ü, kên temple and have a ho shang t’an i chat with the bonzes t’an. (Buddhist priests).

15. A. Wo k’an chê tso 15. I think this is a Taoist miao shih Tao temple, not Bud- chiao, pu shih Fo hist. chiao.

"Tso" is the classifier of temples, towers, houses, etc.

16. B. Na mei yu kuanhsi, 16. That doesn’t matter, tsa mên shang let’s go up and then ch’ü tsai shuo pa. we shall see.

17. A. Ai, chê hsieh ts’ang 17. My! but these flies and ying ho ma i, t’ao ants, what a nuisance yen pu t’ao yen. they are!

"T’ao"—to beg, seek; "yen"—dislike. To ask for one’s dis- pleasure, so hateful, nuisance, etc.

18. B. Hsing k’uei chê li 18. Fortunately there are mei yu wên tzu. no mosquitoes here. Wên tzu yao jên They bite terribly. yao tê li hai.
12. 綴 Chih.⁴ Scenery, view.
景綴 Ching-chih. Scenery, view.
草地 Ts’ao-tí. The fields, on the grass, lawn.

13. 坡 P’o.¹ The slope of a hill.
廟 Miao.⁴ Temple, fair.
頂 Ting.³ Summit, top.
塔 T’a.³ Pagoda, dagoba.

14. 和尚 Ho-shang.⁴ Buddhist priest.

道 Tao.⁴ Doctrine, principle, reason, way, etc.
道教 Tao-chiao. Taoism, Taoist.
佛 Fo.² Buddha.
佛教 Fo-chiao. Buddhism.

17. 蝈 Ts’ang.¹ Fly, with the next.
螗 Ying.² Fly, with the preceding.
蟻 Ma³-i.³ Ant.
討 T’ao.³ To beg, seek.
厭 Yen.⁴ Dislike.
討厭 T’ao-yen. Annoying, vexing.

18. 咬 Yao.³ To bite.
19. A. Ai, k’an k’an lo t’o, lo tzu, mao lü, k’o to la.
"K’o . . . to la", the "k’o" for emphasis.

19. I say! look at this multitude of camels, mules and donkeys.

20. B. Tsung shih miao shang k’ai hsiang hui, k’o jen tao pu shao.

20. There must be a fair on at the temple, with this mass of visitors.


21. Quite so. Some are carrying their children, some have bundles on their backs, while others are carrying water (on their shoulders).

"K’o pu shih ma", a very common phrase, expressing assent, agreement.

Note the different words used for "carry" according to the method of carrying. See Vocabulary.


22. Very gay and lively. There must be theatricals on.

"Jê nao" and "hung huo" are common terms for noise and bustle, associated with fairs, markets, etc.

23. A. Tsa mên shang miao shang ch’ü k’an k’an.

23. Come on, let’s go up to the temple and see.

24. B. Ai, chieh kuang, chieh kuang.


25. A. K’an hsi yu shih mo hao ch’u.

25. What shall we gain by looking at theatricals?

26. B. Huo ch’ü huo pu ch’ü, ni tê na ting chu i pa.

26. You had better make up your mind whether you are going or not.

"Huo . . . huo"—either . . . or.
19. 驴
驼 T'o.² Camel, with the preceding.
驢 Lü.² Donkey.
毛驢 Mao-lü. Donkey.
驢 Lo² (tzu). Mule.

20. 香 Hsiang.¹ Fragrant, incense.

21. 抱 Pao.⁴ To nurse, carry in the arms.
孩 Hai² (tzu). Child.
背 Pei.⁴ To carry on the back.
挑 T'iao.¹ To carry on a pole on the shoulder.

22. 拗 Nao.⁴ Noise, bustle, disturb.
熱鬧 Jê-nao. Bustling, hot and noisy.
唱 Ch'ang.⁴ To sing.
戲 Hsi.⁴ Theatricals, play on stage.
唱戲 Ch'ang-hsi. Theatricals, to act, play on stage.


25. 好處 Hao-ch’u. Benefit, advantage.
27. A. Pu ju ch'ên cho chê ko chi hui, ch'ü k'an i tz'u hsi pa.

"Tz'u"—a time, a turn. "T'ai" is the classifier of plays, lit. "stage".

27. Well, I suppose we had better take the opportunity to see a play.


"Pieh mei yu pan fa" could also be used. Note this use of "pieh"—otherwise, apart from this, not have way of doing.

"Hsiang hui, etc.", a good illustration of "pictorial" expression, showing the working of the mind in the particular situation.

29. A. Hsing k'uei wo mên mei yu to k'ang tung hsi. Na li yu i ko jên ch'ien la i p'i ma, p'a ts'ai la jên.

"K'ang"—carry on shoulder; see 21 above.
"Ch'ien"—to lead a horse—a special term for this action.

29. Fortunately we have not brought much baggage with us (on a pole). There's a man leading a horse, I'm afraid it might trample on someone.


Note "tê hên" following the adjective, again for emphasis.
27. 趁 Ch’èn. Avail of.
    機會 Chi-hui. Opportunity.

28. 澀 Yung. To crowd or press together.
    擠 Chi. To crowd together.

29. 扛 K’ang. To carry on shoulder.
    牽 Ch’ien. To lead a horse by the bridle.
    匹 P’i. Classifier of horses.
    踩 Ts’ai. To trample or step on.

EXERCISE No. 38

Common Proverbs

1. Tsai chia ch’ien jih hao. 1. A thousand days at home is all right.
Tsai wai shih shih nan. But when you are away there are always difficulties.

“Shih shih”—everything. The repetition of the noun indicates multiplication, even to universality; e.g., "t’ien t’ien" is every day.

2. Shou tê k’u chung k’u.
Fang wei jên shang jên.

2. Extreme suffering makes one an outstanding man.

Note the parallelism here. “K’u chung k’u”—hardship in hardship; “jên shang jên”—man above man; both suggesting an extreme. “Fang”, an alternative for “ts’ai”—”then” a logical sequence.

3. Chên chin tsu pu p’a huo lien.
4. Chung kua tê kua, chung tou tê tou.

3. True gold doesn’t fear the refiners’ fire.
4. You reap what you sow (lit. plant a melon and you reap a melon, plant beans and you get beans).

That which a man sows he shall also reap.

5. Ya tzu ch’ih huang lien, sui k’u pu nêng yen.

5. When a dumb man eats the “huang lien”, he is unable to describe its bitterness.

To suffer in silence.
“Huang lien”—a bitter plant.


6. A long journey reveals the strength of a horse.
3. 金   Chin.¹ Gold, metal.
    煉   Lien.⁴ To refine.
4. 瓜   Kua.¹ Melon.

5. 黃連   Huang lien.² A bitter plant.

6. 遙   Yao.² Distant.
Jih chiu chien jen hsin.  
And you discern a man’s heart after long acquaintance with him.

7. Ch’ui mao ch’iu tz’u.  
7. Blowing the fur to find flaws (a faultfinder).

8. Pu p’a man, chih p’a chan.  
8. It’s well to keep going, even if the going is slow. Stagnation is to be dreaded.

To keep going is important.

9. A distant well (water) is of no avail to put out a fire which is near at hand.

Hope deferred maketh the heart sick.

10. Tso ching kuan t’ien.  
10. Sitting in a well and looking at the sky (parochialism).

Parochialism.

11. Ch’i hu nan hsia.  
11. Once you are mounted on a tiger the difficulty is to get down.

You’ll suffer for your rashness.

12. I ko jen chiao t’a liang chih ch’uan.  
12. (Like) a man straddling two boats. (Hesitancy) “He who hesitates is lost”.

Hesitancy is dangerous.

13. Pu tao ho pien pu t’o hsieh.  
13. Don’t take your shoes off until you reach the river.

Meeting trouble halfway.
7. 吹
Ch’ui.¹ To blow.

Tz’u.¹ A flaw, blemish.

9. 救
Chiu.⁴ To save, deliver.

11. 虎
Hu.³ Tiger.

12. 踏
T’a.⁴ Step on, tread.

Chih.¹ Classifier of boats, shoes, etc.
14. Ch’ien jên tsai shu, hou jên ch’êng liang.

Our debt to our forefathers.

15. Shih niao tsai shu,

Pu ju i niao tsai shou.

A bird in the hand is worth two in the bush.

I fu shih hsin ti hao.

17. Mou shih tsai jên.
Ch’êng shih tsai t’ien.

18. Chin t’ien t’o la hsieh ho wa, pu chih ming t’ien ch’uan pu ch’ uan.

The uncertainty of life.


Extraordinary luck.

19. A blind cat happens upon a dead rat.

20. Shan yu shan pao, o yu o pao.

20. Goodness brings a good reward, evil an evil recompense.
14. 栽
Tsai.¹ To plant.

乘
Ch’eng.² Avail of.

15. 鳥
Niao.³ Bird.

17. 謀
Mou.² To plan, devise.

19. 貓
Mao.²¹ Cat.

死
Ssu.³ Dead, to die.

鼠
Shu.³ Rat, mouse.

老鼠
Lao-shu. Rat, mouse.

20. 善
Shan.⁴ Good.

惡
O.⁴ Evil.
20. Shan o pu pao, shih hou wei tao. If good and evil are not requited, it is (merely) because the time has not yet arrived.

21. Shan mên nan k’ai.  Shan mên nan pi.  21. It is hard to prise open the door of benevolence, and equally hard to shut it.

Used of charitable deeds. It is hard to get people to help you when in need (from the standpoint of the needy). Once you have begun to distribute alms, you will find it hard to stop (from the standpoint of the benefactor); i.e., there will always be a crowd of beggars round you if you give to one.

21. 閉 Pi. To close.
DIALOGUE No. 39

In the City

Two friends, A and B, who meet a third friend, C

1. A. Tui mie’rh, na tso shih t’ou tsao ti fang tzu, shih shih mo.

“Shih t’ou tsao ti”—made or built of stone.

1. What is that stone building opposite?

2. B. Ni wén ti shih cha ch’i kan ti na ko fang tzu ma.

2. Are you asking about that building with the flag-pole?

3. A. Shih ti. Kua kuo ch’i ti na ko fang tzu.

3. Yes, the building with the national flag flying.


4. Oh, that is the “Patriotic Cinema Theatre”. Do you want to see the films?

5. A. Ch’èng li ti yin hang, chi tien chung kuan mên.

5. What time do the banks in the city close?

“Kuan mên”. The difference between “kuan” and “shang” should be noted. “Kuan” is used of doors on hinges; “shang” of shutters.

6. B. Yin hang san tien chung kuan mên, ch’ien p’u i chih k’ai tao chiu tien chung.

6. The big banks close at three, but the cash shops keep open until nine o’clock.
VOCABULARY OF DIALOGUE No. 39

1. 石 造  Shih ² (t'ou). Stone.  
   Tsao.⁴ To build, made.  

2. 揚 旗 樁  Cha.¹ To stick in.  
   Ch'î.² Flag, banner.  
   Nan.³ Staff, pole.  

4. 影 電影 愛國  Ying.³ Shadow, image.  
   Tien-ying. The cinema film (electric-shadow).  
   Ai-kuo. Patriotic.  

5. 行 銀行  Hang.² A store, shop, etc.  
   Yin-hang. A bank.  

6. 鋪 祕鋪  P'u.⁴ A shop.  
7. A. Wo chê li yu i chang hui p'iao (chih p'iao) yao huan ch'êng hsien ch'ien, ts'ai nêng k'an tien ying.

"Huan ch'êng"—change it to become ...
"Ts'ai"—change your money first and "then" you will be able. The "ts'ai" of logical sequence.

7. I have a cheque here which I must cash before I can go to the pictures.

8. B. Ch'ien tien yeh kei ni huan, yeh pu k'ou ch'ien.

8. The cash shops will change it for you, and charge no discount.

9. A. Na mo, wo mên hsien shang yu chêng chû, wo yao ta tien pao kei wo nei jên.

9. Then let us go to the post office first. I want to send a telegram to my wife.

"Nei jên", used in referring to one's own wife, but not to the wife of another man. "Chia li ti" is a common synonym, i.e., "the one in my home".
"Kei" often means "to".

10. B. Yu chêng chû, li chê'r rh yuan ya. Hai shih tien pao chû pi chiao chin.

10. The post office is quite far from here. The telegraph office is nearer.

11. A. Pu kuo wo i ting yao pa chê liang fêng kua hao hsin, chi kei wo kung ssu ti ta pan.

11. But I must first send these two registered letters to the manager of my firm.

"Ta pan"—the big boss. Others in order of seniority are "erh pan", second boss, "san pan", third boss, and so on.

12. B. I fêng kua hao hsin, t'ieh to shao yu p'iao.

12. How many stamps must one put on a registered letter?
7. 汇票  Hui-p’iao. Bank cheque, draft, etc.
支票  Chih-p’iao. Bank cheque, draft, etc.

8. 扣  K’ou. To deduct, discount.

9. 邮政  Yu. To convey, postal service.
邮政局  Yu-chêng-chü. The post office.
报告  Pao. Report, announce, inform.
电报  Tien-pao. Telegram.
打电报  Ta-tien-pao. To send a telegram.
内  Nei. Inside, within.
内人  Nei-jen. Wife, my wife.

11. 挂号  Kua-hao. To register, letters, parcels, etc.
公司  Ssu. Manage, board, company.
公司  Kung-ssu. A public company.
大班  Ta-pan. Manager, chief

12. 贴  T’ieh. To stick on, as stamps.
邮票  Yu-p’iao. Postage stamps.
寄  Chi. To send.
13. That I don’t know. But we will go to the office to inquire.

14. Good. Hello, here’s a fellow-townsman coming along. Hello! I did not expect to come across you here. What’s your hurry?

“Hsiang pu tao”, used of anything that unexpectedly happens.
“Ni mang shêm-mo” — you hurry what? What is your hurry?

15. C. Ai, liao pu tê. Wo ti tsu fu pei ch‘i ch‘ê pan tao la. Shou la chung shang. Wo hsien tsai shang i yüan k’an t‘a ch‘ü.
15. Ah, terrible! My grandfather has been knocked down by a motor car. He has sustained severe injuries, and I am just going to the hospital to see him.

“Liao pu tê” — terrible — may be applied to propitious as well as unpropitious events, but more generally it is used of the latter.
“Pei”, the normal passive sign; translated “by”.

16. B. K‘o hsi, k‘o hsi. Pu kan liu lan ni, t‘i wo wên hou ling tsu pa.
16. I am sorry (what a pity). I mustn’t detain you. Greetings to your grandfather (lit. inquiries on my behalf to ...).

17. C. Hsieh hsieh. Tsai chien.
17. Thank you. Goodbye.

18. Let’s go along to a restaurant, and have something to eat. I am hungry (lit. my stomach is hungry).
想不到 Hsiang-pu-tao. Unexpected (think not arrive).

祖 TSU Ancestors.
受傷 Shou-shang. To receive an injury.
醫院 I-yüan. Hospital.

16. 留欄 Liu-lan. To detain.
令祖 Ling-tsu. Your grandfather.

18. 肚餓 Tu⁴ (tzu). Stomach, belly.
O⁴ Hungry.

20. B. Ai, chê ko kuan tzu pu ts’o, hai yu yin yo tui t’ing.

21. A. Na pu shih yin yo tui, pu kuo shih liu shêng chi ti hsiang shêng.

22. B. Wo k’an shih wu hsien tien kuang po ti yin yo.


24. B. Hui shih hui. Wo chin t’ien t’ai lei la, pu hsiang t’iao wu.

25. A. Na mo, wo mên chiu ch‘ü k’an tien ying pa. I mien hsiu hsi, i mien chang chih shih.

"I mien ... i mien"—on the one hand ... and on the other.
19. 嘴乾 Tsui-kan. Thirsty (lips dry).
啤 P’i² (chiu). Beer.

音樂 Yin-yo. Music.
音樂隊 Yin-yo-tui. Band.

響聲 Hsiang²-shêng. Noise, sound.

22. 無線電 Wu-hsien-tien. Wireless (no-wire-electric).
廣 Kuang.³ Wide, broadcast.
播 Po.¹ To spread abroad.
廣播電台 Kuang-po-tien-t’ai. A broadcasting station.

23. 跳 T’iao.⁴ To dance, jump.
舞 Wu.³ To posture, brandish, dance.

24. 累 Lei.³ Tired, fatigued.

25. 一面 I-mien. On the one hand.
26. B. Pu ts’o. Wo i wei

na tao kêng yu
hsing ch’ü (ch’ü
wei).

26. Very good. I think
that will be more
interesting.
26. 趣  興趣  Ch’ü. ᵍ Interestig, amusing.
             Hsing-ch’ü. Interesting, interest.
DIALOGUE No. 40

On War and Peace

Two friends, A and B

1. A. Wo chê i pei tzu ti kung fu, chiu p'êng tao la liang tz'u ti shih chieh ta chan.

1. I have experienced (lit. met with) two world wars in my lifetime.

2. B. Wei shih mo shih chieh shang pu nêng kou wei ch'ih ho p'ing ni.

2. How is it that peace cannot be organised on earth?

"Nêng i", synonym for "nêng kou"—can, be able to.

3. A. Kên pên chiu shih yin wei kuo chia kên kuo chia, chung tsu kên chung tsu chih chien, fa hsien pu kung p'ing ti shih hsiang.

3. At bottom it is because between nations and races, certain injustices arise.

"Kên pên"—the root, source, etc., or
"Tao ti"—really, lit. arrive at bottom.
"Chih chien". "Chih" the possessive goes better with "chien" than "ti".
"Fa hsien", lit. become evident, so reveal.

4. B. Ni ti i ssu shih shuo, pi hsien ch'ü hsiao i ch'ieh pu kung p'ing ti

4. Do you then mean, that in order to obtain a peaceful world, we must first eliminate
VOCABULARY OF DIALOGUE No. 40

1. 輩 Pei.⁴ Generation.

2. 維持 Wei.² To maintain, organise.
   Ch’ih.² To organise, maintain.
   Wei-ch’ih. To organise and keep going.

3. 之 Chih.¹ Like “ti”, the sign of the possessive, only with a slightly literary flavour.
   Shih-hsiang. The details of affairs, affairs.
   Tsu.² A clan, tribe.

4. 取消 Ch’ü-hsiao. To cut out, eliminate.
shih, ts'ai nêng
p'an wang tê tao,
yu i ko ho p'ing
ti shih chieh ma.

"Ni ti i ssu shih shuo"—in exact terms your meaning is.
"Ts'ai"—of logical sequence. Cf. Dial. 39, sen. 7.

5. A. Shih chieh shang fa
shêng chan shih,
to pan shih yin
wei wo kang ts'ai
shuo kuo ti yûan
ku. Pu kuo jên
jên tou yu i ko
tzu ssu ti hsin.
Chê yeh pu k'o
pu chu i ti.

"To i pan"—mainly, the majority.
"Pu k'o pu . . .", another example of the double negative for emphasis.

6. B. Pu ts'ô. Jên ti tzu
ssu hsin, shih ts'ai
nan yû ch'ü tiao.

6. Quite right. The selfish instincts of man
are certainly hard to
eradicate.

7. A. K'o shih hsien tsai
ti, ti êrh tz'û ta
chan i ching wan
la. Tê Kuo, I
Kuo, Jih Pen,
tou i ching t'ou
hsiang la.

"Hsiang", also read "chiang", but not in the sense of surrender.

7. But the second Great
War is now over.
Germany, Italy and
Japan have all sur-
rendered.

8. B. Ai ya. Chung Kuo
ti k'ang Jih Pen
ti ch'in lüeh, i
ching pa nien
liao.

8. Ah! China has been
resisting Japanese
aggression for eight
years now.
5. 私
Ssu.¹ Selfish, private.
自私
Tzu-ssu. Selfish.
原
Yuan.² Source.
注
Chu.⁴ Fix.

6. 去掉
Ch’ü-tiao. To eliminate, get rid of.

7. 德國
Tê²-kuo. Germany.
意國
I-kuo. Italy.
日本
投
T’ou.² To hand in, surrender.
降
Hsiang.² To submit, surrender (with the preceding).

8. 抵
Ti.³ To resist.
抗
K’ang.⁴ To resist, oppose (with the preceding).
侵
Ch’in.¹ To invade.
9. A. Liang pien ssu shang ti jên, tou fei ch’ang ti to la.
9. The killed and wounded on both sides are extremely (unusually) many.

10. B. Shih tsai pu shao. Fang tzu pei cha tan cha huai la ti, yeh shih hên to.
10. Very many indeed. And the number of buildings that have been destroyed by bombing is tremendous.

"Pei", another instance of the Passive voice expressed in this way. See Dial. 39, sen. 15.

11. A. Mêng chûn i ching chan shêng la, Tê Kuo ho Jih Pen i ching ta pai la. Ni hsiang chiang lai hai hui fa shêng chan shih ma.
11. Now that the Allies are victorious, and Germany and Japan have been defeated, do you think there will be another war?

"Chan shêng"—fight-win, get the victory.

12. B. Pu kan shuo i ting. Tan shih chê i tz’u chan chêng yung ti wu ch’i, fei ch’ang ti ts’an pao. Yeh hsü ko kuo tou shou la chê chung k’ung hsia (ho), tsai pu kan hsüan chan liao.
12. One cannot say for certain. But the weapons used during this war have been so cruel and terrifying, that perhaps as each nation has been so intimidated by the terror, no one will dare to proclaim war again.

"Chê i tz’u"—this, this instance of . . .
"Fei ch’ang". "Fei" is not; "ch’ang" is usual, so extraordinary.
"Huo cho"—perhaps, possibly.
8. 略 Liao.² To plunder.
侵略 Ch’in-liao. Aggression.

10. 被 Pei.⁴ Sign of passive.
炸 Cha.² Smash, explode.
彈 Tan.⁴ Bomb, bullet.
炸彈 Cha-tan. Bomb.
壞 Huai.⁴ Ruin, destroy, spoil.

11. 盟 Mêng.² Covenant, alliance.
盟軍 Mêng-chûn. The Allied Forces.
勝 Shêng.¹ Victory, conquer.
敗 Pai.⁴ Defeat, spoil.

12. 武器 Wu³-ch’i. Weapons.
殘 Ts’an.² Injure, cruel.
暴 Pao.⁴ Violent, fierce, cruel.
恐 K’ung.³ To terrify, fearsome.
嚇 Hsia.⁴ Alarm, startle.
宣 Hsüan.¹ To proclaim, make public.
宣戰 Hsüan-chan. To declare war.
爭 Chêng.¹ Wrangle, strive.
13. A. Wo hsiang hsin shih chê yang, ping ch’ieh chin nien liu shih to kuo, tsu chih la i ko lien ho hui, yao chin li ti wei ch’ih shih chieh ho p’ing.

"Hsiang hsin"—to believe. The use of "hsiang" here is probably an instance of its reflective use, forming the middle voice form of the verb.

14. B. Ting hao. Tan shih wo k’an tsai pi yao shih, hai tê yung lien ho ti chên li, ju hai chên, lu chên, k’ung chên ti li liang, lai pang chu, hui i ts’ai neng yu mei man ti hsiao kuo.

"Lien ho", or "lien pang"—connected or Allied States. Cf. 11, where we have "mêng chên"—the covenanted or allied forces.

"Mei-man". "Mei" is good, excellent; "man" is full, satisfactory.

15. A. T’ung i la. Hsien tsai ti chêng chih chu i hèn fu tsa. Yu min chu chu i, kung ch’an chu i, hai yu ch’i t’a ti ko ming ti ho shou chiu ti, ko chung chêng chih shang ti p’ai pieh.

"T’ung i"—same meaning, so agreed.
13. 信  
Hsin.⁴ To believe.  
相  
信  
Hsiang-hsin. To believe, have faith.  
組  
織  
Tsu.³ To organise, cord.  
且  
Chih.¹ To weave, but with the preceding means to organise.  
Ch’ich.³ Moreover, and.

14. 聯  
Lien.³ To connect, unite.  
海  
Hai.³ The sea.  
海軍  
Hai-chün. The Navy.  
陸軍  
Lü⁴-chun. The Army.  
空軍  
K’ung-chün. The Air Force.  
美滿  
Mei-man. Complete, satisfactory.  
效  
Effect, effective.  
效果  
Hsiao-kuo. Result, effect.  
會議  
Hui⁴-I.⁴ Assembly.  
助  
Chu.⁴ Help, assist.

15. 治  
Chih.⁴ To govern.  
政治  
Chêng-chih. Political, Government.  
複  
Fu.⁴ Double.  
複雜  
Tsa.² Confused, complicated.  
複雜  
Fu-tsa. Complex, confused.  
產  
Ch’an.³ Property.  
共産  
Kung-ch’an. Communist (public or common property).  
主義  
Chu-i. -ism, ideology.  
其他  
Ch’i-t’a. Others, other.
"Chu i", equal to our -ism theory, ideology, etc.; e.g., "San Min Chu I", the "Three People's Principles" of Sun Yat Sen.

"Fu-tsa". "Fu" is double; "tsa" confused, so complex, complicated, many and varied.

"Ko-ming", lit. change the decree, revolutionary.

16. B. Na tao pu yao chin. Pu p'a chêng chih shang ti tang p'ai to, chih p'a chung jên pu chu i chêng chih shang ti shih ch'ing.

16. But that is unimportant. We need not fear multiple political parties. What is to be feared is that the mass of the people pay no attention to politics.

"Tang p'ai"—parties, factions, "Chia" is used to indicate a certain class or cross-section of people: "chêng-chih-chia"—politicians; "wên-hsüeh-chia"—literary man, author ("wên" being letters, literature).

"Chu i" is a verb here, to pay attention or heed to. Cf. 15 above.
15. 革命
Ko.² To change, alter.
Ko-ming. Revolutionary (change the decree).

守舊
Shou-chiu. Conservative (guard the old).

派
P'ai.⁴ Party, separate, branch.

派別
P'ai-pieh. Parties.

16. 黨
Tang.³ Party, association, faction.

衆人
Chung-jên. Everybody, the people.
CHINESE TEXT OF THE DIALOGUES
HINTS FOR THE STUDENT

As the aim of this book is to give the student a basic knowledge of both the written and spoken forms of the Chinese language, the forty dialogues have been prepared in Romanised and Chinese characters.

The student should use the Chinese characters from the very outset of his studies, and turn to the Romanised form only as a last resort.

Here are a few hints to aid the student in acquiring a mastery of the dialogues, viz.:

1. Write out the sentences in the Chinese characters repeatedly.
2. Do not attempt to absorb too many sentences at any one session, especially at the beginning. Learn thoroughly what you do.
3. Constantly revise your past work.
4. As you write the sentences, repeat the separate sounds aloud. The actual hearing of the sounds is an additional aid to memory.
5. Frequently close the book and repeat the sentences without its aid.
6. Constantly compare your efforts at memorising with the text.
7. Vary the sentences by altering the pronouns, and the number and tense of the verbs.
8. Think of the "opposite" of adjectives, adverbs, etc., e.g., "black" and "white"; "long" and "short"; "quickly" and "slowly", etc., and make new sentences along this line.
9. As you have opportunity of conversing, use what you have learnt. Do not be afraid of making mistakes.
Listen attentively to the response especially if it is from a Chinese. This will often be preceded by a repetition of your question, probably in better “Chinese”!

10. Repeat the reply to yourself, and write down in a note-book anything that is new.

11. Finally, let me repeat advice given in the Introduction. Think of each sentence as a whole, as representing an “idea”, and do not be too anxious to analyse the sentence into its component parts. Ability to do this will come naturally as you acquire more of the language.
第一課

門口有人。

我去看一看。

來吧。

先生貴姓？

李先生來了。

好。

好，請坐，請坐。

謝謝。

好，王先生張先生都好。

請進來吧。

在家請進來。

先生貴姓？

李先生來了。

好。

好，請李先生喝茶。

謝謝。

好，請坐，請坐。

謝謝。

對不起，有人等着我要回去。

不送不送。

再見再見。
第二課

1. 王先生來了。
2. 請他進來。
3. 王先生好呀？
4. 好。

太太大喲過飯沒有。
5. 喲了。先生喲了嗎？
6. 還沒有喲。

7. 請先生坐。
8. 先生坐。
9. 先生泡茶。
10. 先生泡茶。
11. 不客氣。
12. 不客氣是理當的。
13. 請先生喝茶。
14. 謝謝。
15. 中國話我不大懂。
16. 太太幾時到敝國來的。
17. 我是上月才到貴國來的。
18. 太太的中國話說得好。
19. 過獎過獎。
20. 真的實在好。
21. 中國話容易學。
22. 我真念的教你就是了。
23. 我願意把中國話學好。
第三課

這個是什麼？

那是一本書。

那是一本書。

我們可以讀什麼書。

我們可以唸什麼書。

請先生唸我聽。

那本書不大好。

我們可以唸這個讀本。

先生先唸我就跟着唸行不行。

這個法子不好。

我們可以唸這個讀本。

先生愛學。 22

我喜歡寫字。

會寫字不會。

不會可是我願

現在

我們可以寫字。

當然

現在

我們可以寫字。

不會

不會

我們可以唸什麼書。

我們可以唸什麼書。

那本書叫什麼。

那本書叫什麼。

我們可以唸什麼書。

請先生唸我聽。

這個法子不好。

我們可以唸這個讀本。

先生先唸我就跟着唸行不行。

這個法子不好。

我們可以唸這個讀本。

先生愛學。 22

我喜歡寫字。

會寫字不會。

不會可是我願

現在

我們可以寫字。

當然

現在

我們可以寫字。

不會

不會

我們可以唸什麼書。

我們可以唸什麼書。

那本書叫什麼。

那本書叫什麼。

我們可以唸什麼書。

請先生唸我聽。

這個法子不好。

我們可以唸這個讀本。

先生先唸我就跟着唸行不行。

這個法子不好。

我們可以唸這個讀本。

先生愛學。 22

我喜歡寫字。

會寫字不會。

不會可是我願

現在

我們可以寫字。

當然

現在

我們可以寫字。

不會

不會

我們可以唸什麼書。

我們可以唸什麼書。

那本書叫什麼。

那本書叫什麼。

我們可以唸什麼書。

請先生唸我聽。

這個法子不好。

我們可以唸這個讀本。

先生先唸我就跟着唸行不行。

這個法子不好。

我們可以唸這個讀本。

先生愛學。 22

我喜歡寫字。

會寫字不會。

不會可是我願

現在

我們可以寫字。

當然

現在

我們可以寫字。

不會

不會

我們可以唸什麼書。

我們可以唸什麼書。

那本書叫什麼。

那本書叫什麼。

我們可以唸什麼書。

請先生唸我聽。

這個法子不好。

我們可以唸這個讀本。

先生先唸我就跟着唸行不行。

這個法子不好。

我們可以唸這個讀本。

先生愛學。 22

我喜歡寫字。

會寫字不會。

不会可是我願

現在

我們可以寫字。

當然

現在

我們可以寫字。

不會

不會

我們可以唸什麼書。

我們可以唸什麼書。

那本書叫什麼。

那本書叫什麼。

我們可以唸什麼書。

請先生唸我聽。

這個法子不好。

我們可以唸這個讀本。

先生先唸我就跟着唸行不行。

這個法子不好。

我們可以唸這個讀本。

先生愛學。 22

我喜歡寫字。

會寫字不會。

不會可是我願

現在

我們可以寫字。

當然

現在

我們可以寫字。

不會

不會

我們可以唸什麼書。

我們可以唸什麼書。

那本書叫什麼。

那本書叫什麼。

我們可以唸什麼書。

請先生唸我聽。

這個法子不好。

我們可以唸這個讀本。

先生先唸我就跟着唸行不行。

這個法子不好。

我們可以唸這個讀本。

先生愛學。 22

我喜歡寫字。

會寫字不會。

不會可是我願

現在

我們可以寫字。

當然

現在

我們可以寫字。

不會

不會

我們可以唸什麼書。

我們可以唸什麼書。

那本書叫什麼。

那本書叫什麼。

我們可以唸什麼書。

請先生唸我聽。

這個法子不好。

我們可以唸這個讀本。

先生先唸我就跟着唸行不行。

這個法子不好。

我們可以唸這個讀本。

先生愛學。 22

我喜歡寫字。

會寫字不會。

不會可是我願

現在

我們可以寫字。

當然

現在

我們可以寫字。

不會

不會

我們可以唸什麼書。

我們可以唸什麼書。

那本書叫什麼。

那本書叫什麼。

我們可以唸什麼書。

請先生唸我聽。

這個法子不好。

我們可以唸這個讀本。

先生先唸我就跟着唸行不行。

這個法子不好。

我們可以唸這個讀本。

先生愛學。 22

我喜歡寫字。

會寫字不會。

不會可是我願

現在

我們可以寫字。

當然

現在

我們可以寫字。

不會

不會

我們可以唸什麼書。

我們可以唸什麼書。

那本書叫什麼。

那本書叫什麼。

我們可以唸什麼書。

請先生唸我聽。

這個法子不好。

我們可以唸這個讀本。

先生先唸我就跟着唸行不行。

這個法子不好。

我們可以唸這個讀本。

先生愛學。 22

我喜歡寫字。

會寫字不會。

不會可是我願

現在

我們可以寫字。

當然

現在

我們可以寫字。

不會

不會

我們可以唸什麼書。

我們可以唸什麼書。

那本書叫什麼。

那本書叫什麼。

我們可以唸什麼書。

請先生唸我聽。

這個法子不好。

我們可以唸這個讀本。

先生先唸我就跟着唸行不行。

這個法子不好。

我們可以唸這個讀本。

先生愛學。 22

我喜歡寫字。

會寫字不會。

不會可是我願

現在

我們可以寫字。

當然

現在

我們可以寫字。

不會

不會

我們可以唸什麼書。

我們可以唸什麼書。

那本書叫什麼。

那本書叫什麼。

我們可以唸什麼書。

請先生唸我聽。

這個法子不好。

我們可以唸這個讀本。

先生先唸我就跟着唸行不行。
不要抽煙。

這兩管筆是你的嗎？

那一管是你的。那一管鋼筆是我的。

那一瓶墨水也是他的嗎？

這撈兒好不好？

不大好。

這些煙不適合他的是先生的。

那一管毛筆是不適合他的朋友的。

那樣呢？

那一管墨水是不適合他的。

這一管呢？

不是我的。不是我的。

這一塊兒去市場上買的。在那裡有賣的。

在這裡有賣的沒有？

上大街上去或者在這裡買的。

在這裡沒有。

咱們倆可以上街去買幾個吧。

好咱們可以買。
第五课

1. 他來了沒有。
2. 他沒有來。
3. 你來不來。
4. 我
5. 昨天他們來了一。
6. 他們來了。
7. 明天你
8. 明天我們不來。
9. 今天你去不去。
10. 我去。
11. 明天你回來不。
12. 明天不回來。
13. 明天她回去不。
14. 是的 明天她回去。
15. 你
16. 我上街去。
17. 我也去。
18. 你去幹
19. 我去買東西。
20. 購什麼東西。
21. 購一頂
22. 到過北京沒有。
23. 沒有到過。
24. 起來我們走吧。
25. 等一等得拿幾個錢。
26. 那不
第六課

1. 太太叫我吧。
2. 是的，叫廚子和看門的門房來我要
3. 不用坐我們站着的好。他們就來。哎來了。
4. 坐下吧。
5. 太太叫我們做什麼我們照辦就是了。
6. 今天我很忙要大家幫忙。
7. 先把嘗飯的家具拿來我要看一看。
8. 太太是叫我們把刀子、叉子調匙和勺子都要拿來嗎？
9. 是的，也要拿茶盃碗。
第七課

1 先生好嗎？
2 蘇先生你好。
3 先生好。
遠？

在那裡還

14. 大廳

我

13. 生

12. 五十多生

11. 名

10. 名

9. 名

8. 名

7. 名

6. 名

5. 名

4. 名

3. 名

2. 名

1. 名
第八課

1. 家裡有幾個人？
2. 統共六個。
3. 父母還在嗎？或父
    母都在不在？
4. 八十二歲。
5. 令堂去世是多大年紀？
6. 可惜可惜。
7. 令堂在，母親不
    在了。
8. 五十六歲。
9. 非常的快。
10. 先生有爹爹沒有？
11. 還沒有成
    家嗎？(P)
12. 先生訂了婚沒有？
13. 訂了。
14. 先生結了
    四個。
15. 結了婚了。
16. 先生有幾個孩子。
17. 没有走水路也沒有走旱路我是坐飛機來的。
18. 走了幾天的工夫。
19. 一共四天的工夫。
20. 哎呀。
21. 口去。
18 男的有幾個？
19 兩個男的兩個女的。
20 好

21 托福托福。
22 先生令郎幾位？
24 令媛有幾位？
24a 小女兩個。
25 小
26 我是個商人或我做買賣。
27 先生幹什麼公幹或先生幹什麼事？
28 我有。
29 在教。
30 我是
31 這裡有耶穌教還是天主教呢？
32 這裡有耶穌教堂或這裡有福音
33 女教士沒有
34 有牧師女教士在這裡嗎？
35 我是三個月以
36 前來的。
37 哎呀先生說的中國話真好。
兩米十分九寸。數字一百五個整。四百八十。八十。四百四十一。一十四。八。一。
幾? 今天幾?

今天是星期 (禮拜三)。

幾? 今天幾?

今天是星期 (禮拜三)。

今天是星期 (禮拜三)。

幾? 今天幾?

今天是星期 (禮拜三)。
第十課

你看有幾點鐘。

我近視眼看不清楚。

你身上帶了表沒有？

沒有但是對面兒有鐘。

1 你要什麼叫什麼。
2 一月三月四月一直到十一月都是一樣叫什麼。
3 可是十一月也叫冬。<br>
4 年底就是臘月最後幾天的意思。
5 過年就是新年前後的時節。
6 把這些糖也分給他們。
7 這是什麼意思。
8 過年就是新年前後幾天的意思。
9 把這些玩藝兒分開給孩子玩。
10 可以每個人給他一份。
11 這月初兩個月叫臘月。
12 一月十二月叫春月。
13 可是十一月也叫冬月。
14 年底是什麼意思。
15 年底就是臘月最後幾天的意思。
16 過年就是新年前後幾天的意思。
17 把這些玩藝兒分開給孩子玩。
18 可以每個人給他一份。
19 我們也分了兩次。
見了現在是有一點鐘。

哎，我約了閨友十二點半鐘見面已經耽誤了。

恐怕他等不到我走了。

也許他還在等你。

現在幾點鐘？

原來一點（或一點一刻）。

現在幾點鐘？

要是十二點差一刻你就更好。

現在可以過一刻（或一點一刻）。

要是十二點差一刻我還可以趕得上。

要是十二點差二十五分是不是？

夏天你上那兒避暑去的？

前年我們到崂山去避暑的。

兩點差二十五分是不是？

一點二十五分。

一點差二十五分是不是？

要是十二點差一刻我就更不好。

兩點差一刻我還可以過一刻（或一點一刻）。

你們從崂山回來以後做什麼？

什麼也沒有做我在家裡閒著。
第十一課

1. 你有表沒有？
2. 沒有。但是我家裡有一座鐘。
3. 那個鐘走得慢。
4. 不對，那個鐘走得慢。
5. 改了也沒有用。
6. 那麼，把快慢改一改。
7. 改了也沒有用。
8. 怎樣沒有用呢？
9. 我的表走得沒有準。
10. 那麼，兩個球拍子來。
11. 大後天和他打牌。
12. 不敢說，因爲前天我和一個朋友約好。
13. 我喜歡的。
14. 那麼你後天來和我打網球好嗎？
15. 大後天和他打牌。
16. 那麼就是後天吧。
17. 好，你帶
18. 吧。
19. 你不是愛打網球嗎？
20. 那個時候，打網球，踢足球都是。
你們下棋大家可以出去逛一逛。

飯以後要打牌嗎？

隨便我自已倒想下幾盤棋。

飯了

你們要幾個鐘頭？

你最好能來。我請你陪客。

大概是用兩個鐘頭。

今天晚上我請幾個朋友喫飯你能來不能來。

不當我還有事。

不為什麼。

今天沒有工夫。

不一定你把表給我要是後半天有工夫我就給你送去。

你有工夫沒有？

可以不過今天上午我沒有工夫。

下午不好。

你認為一個鐘表匠。

好，你拿我的表叫他看看。

不對可是不知道誰能替我修理。

不錯。
第十二課

不會分手的。
十一黑鐘以前回去就好。

1 把窗戶關上。
2 恐怕關不上。
3 怎麼關不上。
4 有毛病。
5 有什麼毛病。
6 這幾天天氣發潮。
7 那麼得叫木匠來修理。
8 是的我叫李司夫來看一看。
9 前門鎖上了沒有。
10 鎖上了或鎖不上那個鎖上了銹。
11 拿鑰匙來試一試。
12 最好先塗一點兒油。
13 你說的對先塗一點兒油吧。
14 把後門開開吧。
15 那個門我已經開了。
不要再閤上。

要是把門敞開，恐怕小偷進來偷東西。

可不是嗎？不如把門闔上。

這個瓶子的塞子，我取不出來。

那是因為沒有合式的東西，得用一個螺絲轉。

開這個箱子很費事。

把這個箱子（匣子，盒子、筒子）打開。

釘子太多全都上銹了。

要是王先生不在家，問誰去借呢？

你經過園子的時候，看看水井蓋上了沒有。

你那幾個桶子都

是的我就去。

他家裡總有用，就向他借好了。

那個好辦。你上王先生那裡去借他的鉗子。

天清早打完水，就把井蓋上了。
第十三課

32 我把那個髒水，完全倒出去了一點兒也沒有留。
33 園子裡那個大水缸裝的是髒水，你倒出去了沒有。
34 我把那個髒水，完全倒出去了一點兒也沒有留。
35 我把一件事情忘記了。井裡邊的水，是苦的、還是甜的呢？
36 是什麼事情？
37 咱們煮飯泡茶。
38 是甜的可以用水

1 把這一張桌子搬到樓上去。
2 一個人搬不動得叫幾個人來幫忙。
3 要幾個來幫忙。
4 至少要三個
5 雇三個人來抬桌子，經不不不
6 可真不
上算不如雇他們一天的工夫，還可以叫他們做別的事情。

那是自然的，還有什麼事叫他們做呢？

事情倒不少他們可以打掃院子收拾廚房。

這總人一天得給多少工錢。

這樣的人都算小工一天給他六毛錢就行。

兩個人拾不動。

這總的人不夠嗎。

就雇三個人吧，他們幾個鐘頭不夠.

早上六點鐘上工，晚上六點鐘下工。

他們要歇一個半鐘頭。

這邊把幾把椅子搬到那邊去。

可是把椅子老丟沒有空地，我想放在外頭好。
在外地不太好，还不如拿到地底下里面去。

21 我想起

22 是什麼法子。

23 先把這一條長桌子搬到客房裡去。

24 是的以後再做什麼呢？

25 再把這一條凳子掉過來就有地方放這把椅子了。

26 是的就這樣的辦吧。

27 先生得先讓我把桌子上的東西搬走。

28 自然再換一張乾淨的桌布。

29 晚上請四位客所以要收拾飯廳。

30 請客不請客？

31 大司夫曉不曉得？

32 曉得我昨天吩咐了他。

33 好地毯要掃一掃席子要翻過去。

34 好好兒的預備。
第十五課

1 明天中午我要請三個客。
2 太太想嘗什麼飯？
3 先預備幾個小碟子。
4 肉湯不要。
5 要鷄湯。
6 不錯不錯。
7 哎喲一個人想破了這個記錄很費事。
8 全世界最快記錄就是十英里。
9 二尺寬的材料得用多少材料？
10 那看材料的寬狹。
11 差不多。
12 做一條褲子，得用多少材料？
13 三里就是差不多和一英里一樣遠。
14 四個小碟子。
15 那麼三里就是差不多和一英里一樣遠。
16 三里就是差不多和一英里一樣遠。
第十一課

1. 街上有洋車或黃包車沒有？
2. 有是有不？很多。
3. 你趕快去給我雇一輛。
4. 太太上那裡去？
5. 我要上李太太那裡去。
6. 太太要雇來回車嗎？
7. 雇洋車是論里數還是論鐘點呢？
8. 多半是論鐘點吧。
9. 一個鐘頭應該給他多少錢？
10. 太太要我和他講價錢嗎？
11. 一個鐘頭大概給他五毛錢。
12. 我說不準。
13. 我以為五毛錢太多了。
14. 也不要忘了。

要擺糖、牛奶、鹽、胡椒麪、醋、醬油和芥末吧。
六歲上下。
5 她的父母都在世嗎？
6 她父親還在
不過母親早去世了。
7 她早幾年去的世？
你不記得。
8 不大清楚，我想她是五六年前去的世。
9 那麼趙小姐是可憐的。
10 實在可憐。
11 他弟兄幾個？
12 通共八個人。
13 趙小姐是行幾？
14 三個弟兄三個姊妹。
15 趙小姐跟人訂了婚沒有？
16 你說她早就有擔資家裡邊兒的責任。
17 不對她也沒有母親。
18 她也沒有姐妹。
19 姐姐也沒有母親。
20 我可以跟你打聽。
21 我很喜歡托你替我辦這件事。
第十八課

這個東西好。

但是這個比那個好。

所以我不過是盡力幫朋友的忙吧了。

你那樣的出主意我很佩服我不會對你失信的。

別提那個。

無論如何你不要訛詑要是你碰見什麼難處恐
怕過不去的時候你回來詳細細細的告訴我就得了。

壹敢壹敢可是她親戚不少不少得罪兩個人是不容易
哪。

壹壹不敢壹不敢多年的老朋友你也很懂禮貌我看你不會叫我丟臉的。
買的東西太多一個車裝不下。
19 貨物實在太多，
兩個車也拉不動。
我們回到家的時候，恐怕一個
屋裡也放不下這些東西。
我們把兩套在一起，也許就裝
得下了。
22 不過在小椅子上或是小桌子上
可是得小心把東西堆起太高恐怕夠不着。
23 台子這麼高也行。
24 有
台子這麼高，就夠着了。
25 可是也得看台子的寬窄怎樣。
26 要是你比我先到家可以和用人商量，怎麼辦
怎麼好。
27 要是我比你晚到怎樣呢？
28 那麼誰先到
比你先到家必是因為你走錯了路。
29 誰辦就是了。
九十一

教你自己中文

1。教你自己中文。
個綢子的材料跟顏色都很好。給我量丈五吧。

裁縫做好了，太太穿上一定很好看的。

16 有二十多都是懶的。

15 櫃上有多人？

17 拿尺來量一量這個紗子。

18 你有沒有做蚊帳的材料？

19 有哪上中下三等都有，太太喜歡那一種呢？

20 看看中等的吧，這材料也可以做籬子嗎。

21 分量輕了一點兒，再重一點兒的材料好。

22 那倒好辦，我們也有很結實的布做縷子很合式。

23 教我看看吧，可是你們快要關店門，不是嗎。

24 那沒關係關了店門還得清帳當天的賬。
1. 要一雙鞋。
2. 請坐, 要的是幾號?
3. 大概是八號。
4. 先生要皮鞋還是布鞋呢?
5. 要皮鞋穿布鞋不能搭配水。
6. 不錯, 可是在家裡要著穿布鞋是很舒服的。
7. 先把皮鞋拿來試一試吧。
8. 這一雙我很喜歡。
9. 太緊, 再試一雙大一點的。
10. 好, 這一雙我選定了。
11. 舒服, 我就拿這一双在那兒。
12. 在對面的興隆記商號。
13. 你能夠將這雙鞋送回我的家裡去嗎?
14. 行, 先生府上在那兒。
15. 上馬街四十六號。
16. 那不遠我就打
發一個夥計給先生送去。

17 叫他坐洋車，我給他開

車費。

18 不必給他幾個酒錢就得了。

第二十一課

你看一看這個地毯乾淨不乾淨。

這屋子太暗，我

燈裡沒有油點不亮。

家裡沒有安電燈實在可惜。

10 我就把地毯拿到外邊兒去抖一抖。 想口袋裡有一盒可是找不着啦。

11 好我就給你

現在天氣涼，家裡

幫忙把毯子捲起來（或疊起來）。

12 現在天氣涼，家裡
應當生火。

院子裡有煤炭沒有？

一點兒也沒有。今年還沒有買呢。

有我就放在火爐裡去點。

廚房有柴火沒有？

沒有洋火怎麼辦呢？

回家就生火吧。

太陽快下去的時候人人都覺得冷。

你看那衣子裡面有絨毯拿出兩條來。

開開那個抽屜裏邊兒有發汗葯我喫三兩顆再把燈

躺多蓋上一點兒再多喝開水出一點兒汗過兩天就好啦。
第二十二課

拿熱水來我要洗臉。

先生不要洗澡嗎？

先生不要洗澡。

也夠了，水很熱，淋冷水就不夠了。

可是我也得刮臉用冷水不行。

先生渴了嗎？我把一盆冷水拿到樓上去。

先生乏了，還是早點睡的好。

昨天你把牀沒有鋪好，我沒有睡好覺。

對不起先生，昨天事情太多，忙不過來。

要是你的事情太多，幹不過來的時候，我就該給你找一個幫忙的。
一件汗衫的地方太多，不如家裡洗的好。

6. 洗衣店的工人不加小心，上和楼下。

7. 每禮拜二要收拾家裡的房屋，所這些歸誰辦呢？

8. 收拾客房和洗澡房是我的事收拾飯廳，另外還有書房和廁所，廚房是廚子的事是不是？

9. 所這些歸誰辦呢？

10. 平常這些都是看門的或是馬夫幹的。

11. 無論誰幹家裡總得要乾淨整齊。

12. 聽先生的吩咐。

13. 每禮拜六要擦銀子和玻璃器具，全房子的地毯要抖一抖或者挂在院子裡揮一揮。

14. 這樣做灰塵很大叫鄰居不喜歡。

15. 那不相干家裡得講究衛生。
17. 你說的有理現在不要多說話幹你的去吧。
18. 先生給我一塊乾淨的抹布我就去抹桌子、椅子、鏡子一切的傢具。
19. 好也不要忘了抹傢具的時候要把窗戶開開換換空氣。
20. 天氣好的時候可以這樣簡括風下雨的時候恐怕不行。

沒有買牛肉、鴨子、野鴨嗎？
大司來算賬。
這個禮拜我買了羊肉、白菜、地蛋、紅蘿蔔、雞蛋花生。
這個禮拜你買了什麼東西，慢慢的說吧。
鉛筆。
這幾天市場上沒有這些東西，後天趕集也許有賣的。

7 多日沒有喫白菜花，不是沒有呢。

8 有是有，可是價錢太大我不敢買。

9 大概因為不是時候，留心價落的時候就買。

10 太太喜歡喫生菜嗎？現在又多又便宜。

11 喜歡喫可是得小心，生菜總得先用開水洗過才敢喫。

12 今天我身上不舒服，發燒，恐怕又傷了風了。

13 我請大夫（醫生）來看一看，好不好？

14 不要請西醫，請中國先生給我開方子就行。

15 可是賬還沒算統共花了多少錢？

16 統共花了十一塊五毛六。

17 恐怕這個賬算錯了，你再算算。

18 我看沒
第二十五課

1. 明天我要出門。
2. 先生上那兒去？
3. 打算上普通車？
4. 好，我願意陪您去。
5. 但是你要帶你自己在路上噢的東西。
6. 那不成問題。
7. 在晴天剛上來的時候動身。
8. 先生幾點鐘起身？
9. 不坐轎車，也不
10. 那太費事，怎麼不坐汽車呢？

你還下欠九毛。

也許太太算的對我的腦子就

騎馬我們步行吧。

有算錯我還剩下兩塊七。

恐怕你腦經不清楚，我
11 坐公共汽車不舒服，路道不平，顛簸的厲害。
12 那天
13 大約十五里路。
14 那倒不遠。
15 可是可以步行走也可以。
16 那個我倒忘不了，還有什麼該帶的呢？
17 也帶一個雨傘或雨衣，伏天肯下雨。
18 先生預料得好，我照辦就是了。
19 我們已經跑了十來里路，我們在旅館停一會兒好不好？
20 這條路上的旅店也不怎麼好，倒不如坐在路旁歇一會兒。
21 同意，我們也可以喝一口水，喫幾塊餅乾。
22 哎，老先生倒普
23 不遠，還有五六里路？
24 前面 天池還有幾里路？
第二十六課

1. 這個車是往北京開的車不是?

2. 不是,這是往漢口開的車。

3. 往北京開的火車,是在那一個月台呢?

4. 是第三號月台。

5. 先生要打那一等的票?

6. 這一趟是快車還是慢車呢?

7. 是慢車,可是頭三等都有。

25. 好走不過村子外邊兒有幾個泥坑就是了。

26. 村子裡邊兒有飯館沒有。

27. 沒有,好找不找找好的賣的也不過是家常便飯。

28. 飯館好找不好找呢?

29. 好找,一進村門在路東的就好了。

30. 勞駕。

31. 沒有什麼理當的。
掛的飯(餐車)沒有。

沒有飯(餐車),可是有廚房。

能買什麼飯?

車上能買什麼飯?

等。

可以找腳夫給我搬東西。

搬行李有定價。

兩銅子一件是定價。

別得給幾個價錢嗎?

那什麼我們上車吧。

火車是幾點鐘到北京?

這幾天貨車很多。

乘客也是不少。

那得看路上通不通。

我問候家裡邊兒的人。

光景好,事情要變更。

先生聽的什麼消息?

不錯,運的隊伍也是多啦。

看光景時局像要變更。

盼望再

398
第二十七課

擴充自己的地盤。

28 吱哟！才過的是通縣，還有兩個車站就到了北京。

27 軍閥不管那些只打算打戰老百姓是苦極了。

30 領過不少。

29 跟先生談話時間不會過的那麼快。

31 那兒的話呢。

1 幾點鐘開船。

2 聽說六點半開船。

3 現在幾點鐘？

4 三點半鐘。

5 那麼時候開船。

6 不錯。

7 你打了船票沒有？

8 打了票不過行李還沒有收拾好啦。

9 那麼樣？

10 是的，幸虧有幾個朋友幫心裡自然有一點兒着急。
今天刮大風船上不大穩當。

你看波浪怎樣的翻騰？

哎喲！

有中國飯的滋味不過喫上幾天也就對付。

夏天不像中國熱冬天不像中國冷。

先生也喫得慣法國飯嗎？

先生到過外國沒有？

英國、法國、美國

先生會說法國話嗎？

那邊兒天氣怎麼樣？

常的話。

先生船上再見。

咱们船上再見。

头幾天我覺得不很舒服但是船上慣了就不覺得怎樣。

我都到過。

先生不會說外國話嗎？

先生到過外國沒有？

先生船不暈船？

係系！
起來船搖擺得厲害。
28 別怕只臥下三天的海路船
就到了碼頭。
29 希望越早越好。
30 放心吧。

第二十八課

1 他跑的太快我趕不上。
2 這個水壺已經盛滿再也裝不進。
3 這個桶裝的太緊，我拿不出來。
4 我的事情太多，辦不到了或忙不過來。
5 你記得俗話說的好，忙者不會會者不忙。
6 這個縫兒螺絲轉鑽不進去。
7 今天我帶的東西太多賣不出去。
8 這塊木頭太硬，釘子也打不進去。
9 心裡的意思多，可是說不出來。
我說是這樣就這麼說。我們倒出來就是這個意思。

11 我的耳朵

12 他的眼睛瞎了，他什麼也看不見。

13 他是近視，看不大清楚。

14 他是個啞吧，話也不會說，人家說話他也聽不見。

15 他失了知覺。

16 他的胳膊發麻，你摩他他也不覺得。

17 這一件衣裳太髒了，我們不穿皮袍嗎？

18 多使點子，大大的使勁就可以洗乾淨了。

19 天冷我們穿棉袍或外套。

2 多年輕的人喜歡洋裝。
自然的
6 夏天多穿布鞋。
7 冬天穿皮鞋。
8 戴的是草帽或遮阳帽。
9 女人的
衣裳摩登一点儿才好。

10 袖子、褂子都是短的。

11 褁子现在是很长。

12 学生有穿西装配的短好。

13 理发也还是洋装的多。

14 辫子是老不见。

15 梳一梳头发。

16 刷一刷头发和牙齿。

17 衣服要整齐。

18 指甲要修整，手、脸要保持干净。

19 出门要带洗脸盆、擦脸布和手绢，也不要忘了带牙刷。

20 早起早睡，每天运动是保持健康的好方法。

21 把自己所学的教给别人，也是长知识的法子。

22 你碰见穷人，
人要體恤他們。

苦人要體恤他們。

第30課

要飯的未必然是窮。

孩子們要教訓他們守規矩。

中國話難學不難學呢。

說話怎樣不容易難處在那兒呢。

這四聲是什麼或什麼叫做四聲。

第一叫上平（或陰平）第二叫下平（或陽平）第三叫上

我聽說中國話有五聲對

學中國話用什麼法子好呢？

請一位中
讀十一}}

我愛你

不過是不過是不過是熱愛的字

你愛我

不過是不過是不過是熱愛的字

我愛你

不過是不過是不過是熱愛的字
第三十二課

1. 先生會說英國話嗎？
2. 會一兩句英文嗎？
3. 我正在學呢，還不大會。
4. 先生太謙虛，太客氣。
5. 我來打聽貴縣人民的情形。
6. 很知道敝國的風俗。
7. 很好先生想知道自己那一方面的事情。
8. 先生太謙虛，太客氣。
9. 先談教育一方面。
10. 每個村子有初等小學，大一點的鎮子。
第三十三課

1. 你要去義和就可以醫治我的病。
2. 雖然我願意還
3. 既是不能治我的病，你該介紹
4. 我給別的大夫。
5. 這樣做一定對我很有益，可是我不想去。
6. 爲什麼你不想去？
7. 因為我不認識他，和他不熟
8. 你縱然和他不熟，你也可以放心。因為我知道

土匪沒有。

沒有這邊兒的警察和軍官都盡職。

28 我想貴縣不愧是模範縣。
30 過獎過獎。

14
他是一個好大夫，擔保他能醫治你。

9 你既然這樣的興。我不敢不照著你所說的去做。你這様的聽我勸我也很高興。

10 你就不必勸我，我就遵命就是了。

11 我不得不照着你所說的去做。

12 你要小心，不要把我給你的信丟了。

13 不怕我不會丟掉的。

14 要是你跌倒了就不敢擔保怎樣。

15 信要是掉下來，我就趕快把他拾起來。

16 大夫來到我這裡或者我到那裡去，不是一樣的嗎？

17 大夫還沒有給我看脈，也沒有藥品、有藥布。

18 可是你看脈，有藥布。

19 你沒有告訴我，你身上那兒疼，有用溫度表量。

20 疼是啦。我看你熱度並不髙，伸出舌頭來看一看。
第三十四課

1. 趙先生的脾氣如何。
2. 他是一個心平氣和的人。
3. 聽說他的太太的脾氣不好。
4. 你說的對，但是她的
5. 一個人要是不忍氣常
6. 不過趙先生是個好人，不願意家裡
7. 他們家裡邊打過架沒有。
8. 沒有
9. 邊發生囉唆。
21. 大小便怎麼樣、通不通。
22. 小便通啦、大便不通。
23. 那麼，我給你配藥、你不
24. 請大夫給我配一副丸
藥吧，我不能喫藥粉。
第三十五課

1. 拿刀子來割掉這一條繩子。

2. 這條繩子太粗用

通達的人。他盡量的忍耐不惹她。

對了！他深通儒學。

第三十五課

11. 先生看怎樣能把這種事減少。

常常看不起別人。

12. 一個人要是謙卑就不會發生這樣的事情。

13. 他的太太總喜歡談論人家的長短。

14. 那麼我想她的丈夫和他不容易處。

15. 趙先生必定是一個聰明

16. 不錯。但是

17. 這條繩子太粗用

18. 對了！他深通儒學。

但是有的時候免不了起一點兒衝突。

有的時候聽

哎喲！這是家裡面常見的事。

見他們大聲吵嘴。
第三十六課

1 把你們的書打開。
2 看第幾章第幾節？
3 你唸到第幾頁？

18 罷了，幹你的去吧。

我不耐煩了，找不著我呢？
17 那倒奇怪，我到處找你，那兒也找不

著。

在找不著先生。

16 我並沒有離開這個地方，怎麼你說

話是不配的。

9 長官在軍隊中走來走去。

8 我在諸位面前說這樣的

6 我和你們要在

5 所有的先生都要到會。

4 每個學生都要唸第二十五章的第二章。

3 他和你們在一起的時候你們要盡量的發表你們的意見。

2 看第幾章第幾節？

1 將你們的書打開。
第三十七課

1. 今天過節各機關放假我們旅行好不好？
2. 很好。

25. 衣食住三要樞
26. 穿得暖喫得飽是人人所要。
我們下鄉去一同喫野餐。
3. 贊成盼望天氣要暖和。

4. 就是陰天也不要緊最可怕的就是閃電打雷。

5. 可是夏天不會下雪的。

6. 不錯可是難保不下電子。

7. 冬天下霜山上的樹多麼好看。

8. 好看呢好看

9. 不過河跟湖裡邊兒都結了凍很不方便。

10. 今夜的月亮應該是圓的天氣清朗的時候星星又該多

12. 可以哎喲天氣涼快景緻也好花都開了在草地上面多麼舒服。

13. 你看山坡上的廟山頂上的塔多麼走多麼好看。
好看。  
14 我們上廟上去跟和尚談一談。  
15 我看這
座廟是道教不是佛教。  
16 那沒有關係，我們上去再
說吧。  
17 哎，這些蒼蠅和螞蟻討厭不討厭。  
18 幸虧
這裡沒有蚊子，蚊子咬人咬得厲害。  
19 哎，看看駱駝
驢子，毛驢可多啦。  
20 總是廟上開香會，客人倒不少。  
21 可不是嗎，有人抱孩子，有人背著行李，還有人挑水。
22 來到廟上看看。  
23 咱們上廟上去看看。
24 哎，借光借光。
25 看戲有什麼好處？
26 或去或
不去你得拿主意。  
27 不如趁這機會去看一次
戲吧。
28 我看沒有別的辦法，人這樣的湊著，想回也
一匹馬怕踩了人。

第三十八課

1. 在家千日好，在外時時難。
2. 受得苦中苦，方為人上人。
3. 錢金子不怕火煉。
4. 種瓜得瓜，種豆得豆。
5. 喃子喲，黃連雖苦不能言。
6. 路遙知馬力，日久見人心。
7. 吹毛求疵。
8. 不怕慢，只怕站。
9. 遠水救不了近火。
10. 坐井觀天。
11. 騎虎難下。
12. 一個人腳踏兩隻船。
13. 不到河邊不脫鞋。
14. 前人栽樹，後人乘涼。
15. 十鳥在樹，不如一鳥在手。
16. 人是老的妖衣。
電影。  
錢店也給你換也不扣錢。  
那我們
先上郵政局我要打電報給我內人。  
遠呀還是電報局比較近。  
不過我一定要把這兩封掛號信寄給我公司的大班。
一封掛號信貼多少郵票。
14好哎過來的是一個同鄉，好哎想不到在這兒碰見你你忙什麼？
13那我不曉得我們上局子裡去問一問。
15哎了不得我的祖父給汽車絆倒了，受了重傷我現在上醫院看他去。
12一封掛號信貼多少郵票。
11不過我一定要把這兩封掛號信寄給我公司的大班。
10郵政局離這兒
9那麼我們
8錢店也給你換也不扣錢。
1 我這輩子的工夫就碰到了兩次的世界大戰。

2 那倒更有興趣（趣味）。

3 根本就是因爲國家

4 什 什麼 世 界 上 不 能 夠 維 持 和 平 呢。

20 呀，這個館

21 那 不 是 音 樂 隊 不 過 是 留 聲 機 的 響 聲。

22 我 看 是 無 線 電 廣 播 的 音 樂。

23 可 不 是 嗎 我 聽 說 這 兒 差 不 多 每 晚 上 都 有 跳 舞。

24 會 是 會，我 今 天 太 累 了，不 想 跳 舞。

25 那 麼 我 們 就 去 看 電 影 吧，一 面 休 息 一 面 長 知 識。

26 不 錯 我 以 為
跟國家種族跟種族之間發現不公平的事項。

4 你的

意思說必先取消一切不公平的事才能盼望得到一個和平的世界嗎。

5 世界上發生戰事多半是因為我剛才說過的原故不過人人都有一個自私的心這也不可

注意的。

6 不錯人的自私心實在難於去掉。

7 可是現在的第二次大戰已經完了、德國、意國、日本都已經投降了。

8 哎喲中國抵抗日本的侵略已經八年了。

9 兩邊死傷的人都非常的多啦。

10 實在不少房子被炸彈炸壞了的、也是很多。

11 盟軍已經戰勝了、德國
許各國都受了這種恐嚇，再也不敢宣戰了。這樣，並且今年六十多國組織了一個聯合會，要盡力維持世界和平。

13我相信是合的軍力，如海軍、陸軍、空軍的力量來幫助，會議才能有美滿的效果。

14 頂好，但是我看在必要時，還得用聯合軍力，如海軍、陸軍、空軍的力量來幫助，會議才能有美滿的效果。

15 同意啦，現在的政治主義很複雜，有民主主義，共產主義，還有其他革命的和守舊的各種政治上的派別。

16 那倒不要緊，不怕政治上的黨派多只怕衆人不注意政治上的事情。
GRAMMAR
1. The Article.

The **indefinite** article, *i.e.*, a, or an, is expressed by the numerical adjective "I" (one), followed by a "classifier", which varies according to the noun it precedes, or which may be understood. (See 8, below.)

The most frequently used "classifier" is "ko" 個 which may be translated "piece", *e.g.*, "I ko jên", a man.

Other "classifiers" in common use are given in a separate paragraph below. (See 8.)

The **definite** article, *i.e.*, the, appears only in relative clauses, and then, as in all other cases, its place is taken by the distinguishing adjectives "chê ko" 這個 This, and "na ko" 那個 That. *E.g.*, The man whom I mentioned is "Wo so shuo ti na ko jên". This man is "Chê ko jên". That man is "Na ko jên".

2. Distinguishing Adjectives.

We have already pointed out that "chê ko" means "this" and "na ko" means "that". If the plurals "these" and "those" are required, they are formed by the addition of "hsieh" 些 to "chê" and "na" respectively, *e.g.*, These men, "Chê hsieh jên". Those men, "Na hsieh jên".

If you wish to distinguish definitely this group of men from another, you say "Chê i hsieh jên", 這一些人 This group of men, *or* "Na i hsieh jên", 那一些人 That group of men.

3. Personal Pronouns.

The personal pronouns are as follows: "Wo", 我 I, me. "Ni", 你 You. "T'a", 他 He, she, it.
The plural of these is formed by the addition of "mên", 你 們 "Wo-mên", 我 們 We, us. "Ni-mên", 你 們 You. "T'a-mên", 他 們 They, them.

Formerly there was no distinction of gender in these pronouns, but more recently the distinction is sometimes made by writing the character "nü" 女 at the left-hand side of the characters, especially for "ni" 娘 and "t'a" 她 to express the feminine gender.

4. The Possessive Sign.

The most commonly used mark of the possessive is "ti" 的, which is added to the pronoun or noun which it qualifies, e.g., "Wo ti mao tzu", My hat. "Ni-mên ti tung-hsi", Your (pl.) things. "Na ko jên ti shu", That man's book.

There is another mark of the possessive "chih" 之 but this has a somewhat literary flavour, and is only occasionally used in common speech. It is used in exactly the same way as "ti".

Frequently the possessive is expressed in other ways, one of the more common being to use the distinguishing adjectives "chê ko", "na ko", etc., after the personal pronouns, e.g., "Wo chê ko tung hsi", This thing of mine. "T'a na hsieh yen chüan’rh", Those cigarettes of his.

5. Interrogative Pronouns.

Who? is "Shui", 誰. Whose? is "Shui ti", 誰的 e.g., Who is that? "Na ko jên shih shui". Whose are those things? "Na hsieh tung hsi shih shui ti".

Which? is expressed by "Na ko", the "na" being in the third tone, e.g., "Na ³ ko shih ni ti", Which is yours?

When you wish to distinguish one of two things, or one of more, you should say "Na ³ i ko shih ni ti", Which one is yours?
What? is usually expressed by “Shih mo”, which is the popular form of “shên mo”, e.g., What is this? is “Chê ko shih shih mo”.


Nouns are not divided artificially into different genders as in French or other Continental languages. But unless the gender is self-evident from the word itself, there are words for male and female of persons and animals, which are prefixed to the noun. E.g., “Ni yu chi ko hai tzu”, How many children (no sex indicated) have you? “Wo yu san ko nan hai tzu”, I have three boys (“nan” meaning male). “Ni yu nŭ hai mei yu”, Have you any girls? (“nŭ” being female).

Note that “nan”, male, and “nŭ”, female, are applied only to persons. The words to distinguish the sex of animals are “mu”, 牝 male, and “p’in”, 牡 female.

Usually the plural of nouns is indicated by the plural form of the distinguishing adjective which precedes them, e.g., “Na hsieh jên shang na רב erh ch’ū”, Where are those men going?

But “mên”, the sign of the plural with personal pronouns, is sometimes applied to nouns denoting persons; rarely, if ever, to “things”. E.g., you can say “nan jên mên”, males, “nŭ-jên mên”, females, “hai-tzu mên”, children, but you cannot say “kou mên”, dogs.

Abstract Nouns are formed chiefly in two ways, as follows:—

(1) By joining together two adjectives of exactly opposite meaning; e.g., “Ta-hsiao” (big-little) is size. “Ch’ang-tuan” (long-short) is length. “Yüan-chin” (far-near) is distance. “Kuei-chien” (dear-cheap) is price.

(2) By the addition of the word “ch’u” 处, meaning state or condition, to adjectives, e.g., “hao ch’u”,
benefit, advantage, "hai ch’u", harm, injury, "yung ch’u", use, usefulness, "nan ch’u", difficulty, etc.

7. Cases of Nouns and Pronouns are usually distinguished by the position of the word in the sentence; e.g., "Wo ai ni" is I love you, and "Ni ai wo" is You love me, as far as the Nominative and Objective or Accusative Cases are concerned.

It should, however, be noted that the Objective Case often precedes the verb of which it is the object. In such instances the object of the verbal action is usually prefixed by "pa", or "na", to take, e.g., "Pa chê ko tung hsi, fang tsai chê li", which means Put this thing here.

Many illustrations of this are given in the Dialogues.

The Dative Case is usually expressed by the words "kei", give, "t’i", instead of, or "wei", for, e.g., "Kei wo tso chê ko", Do this for me. "Wo pu nêng pa wo ti shu sung kei t’a", I cannot present my book to him. "Ni t’i wo wên hou ni chia li pie’rh ti jên", Inquire about the well-being of your family for me.

8. Classifiers.

This is a class of words, as has been indicated above, which is used with nouns, to help to distinguish them one from the other. Quite a number will be found in the Dialogues. Examples are given below:—

1. Ko, 個 Piece, the most common, used almost for anything.
2. Ting, 頂 Used with caps, hats, etc.
3. Kuan, 管 Used with slender long things, like pipes, pencils, etc.
4. Chan, 蓋 Used with lamps, wine cups, etc.
5. Pa, 把 Used with teapots, teacups, etc.
6. Tso, 坪 Used with hills, temples, towers, etc.
7. T’ou, 頭 Used with animals.
8. Chien, 件 Used with affairs, details.
9. K’o, 顕 Used of small round things, like pearls, beads, etc.
10. Ts’êng, 層 Used of layers, strata, anything piled up, in tiers, etc.
11. Chang, 張 Used with tables.

There are many others, which will be found in any good dictionary. The student should exercise care in using the right classifier with nouns, as this is a mark of a good speaker.

10. Adjectives of Quality.
A whole Dialogue has been given to the subject of adjectives and their degrees of comparison. (See Dialogue 18.) There is therefore no need to go into any detail in this section. Note however that the adjectives are very simple, and do not change whatever their position in the sentence might be. You may say “Chê ko jên hao”, This man is good, or “Chê shih i ko hao jên”, This is a good man. “Ti” 的 is sometimes used when the adjective is in the predicative position, e.g., “Na ko tung hsi shih ko hao ti”, That is a good thing.


Adverbs of Place and Time have been fully illustrated in the Dialogues and do not call for special consideration here.

Adverbs of Approximation, nearly, about, etc., are usually formed by a phrase like “Ch’a pu to”, “Ch’a pu li”, “Pu ch’a shih mo”, “Ch’a pu to shao”, “Ta kai”, “Ta yüeh”, “Ta lüeh”. Words like
“generally” by “Ta kai shuo”, “Lüeh lüeh ti shuo”. Other expressions like “shang hsia”, up, down, or “tso yu”, left, right, are used for approximate figures.

12. The Auxiliary Verbs “to be” and “to have”.

The verb “to be” is represented by the one word “shih” is and is the same for all persons and numbers. Changes in tense or mood are expressed by additional words or phrases of temporal, conditional or imperative significance.

Likewise the verb “to have” is represented by the one word “yu” 有 and remains the same for all persons and numbers, the tenses and moods being expressed by additional words or phrases.

13. The Regular Verb.

Taking the verb “to come” 來 as an example, the following concise paradigm applies to all, viz.:—

Number and Person. No change, the differences being expressed by the pronouns or adjectives which accompany the verb.

Tense.

The Present Tense is the simple form of the verb, e.g., “Wo lai”, I come, or I am coming.

The Past or Perfect Tense. “Wo lai liao” (la), or “Wo lai kuo”, I came, or I have come.

N.B.—While these two enclitics “liao” (la) and “kuo” are both used in most parts of China as indicated, you should use “kuo” and not “liao” (la) when you wish to refer to the distant past of completed action, e.g., Have you ever been to Peking? or Did you ever go to Peking? is “Ni ch’ü kuo Pei-ching mei yu”.

The Future Tense is formed by preceding the verb with a word of future significance, like “chiang”, 將
"yao", 要 "chiu" 就 etc.; e.g., "T'a chiang lai", "T'a yao lai", "T'a chiu lai", or by two of these words in combination; e.g., "T'a chiu yao lai", "T'a chiang yao lai", etc. There are other ways of expressing the relative immediacy of a person's coming; e.g., "T'a li k'o chiu lai", He is coming immediately, or, as in Dialogue No. 1, "Shuo hua chiu lai", As you speak he comes, etc.

*Compound Tenses* like the Pluperfect, Future Perfect, can also be expressed, chiefly by the addition of phrases of Past or Future Past significance, to the verb; e.g., "T'a mei yu lai i ch'ien, wo i ching tsou la", I had gone before he arrived (Pluperfect). "Kan hsia li pai êrh wo shih i ching tsou la", I shall have gone by next Tuesday (Future Perfect).

*Present Participle.* This is by adding the word "cho" 著 to the verb, and frequently by adding a phrase of time; e.g., "Kên cho t'a yu san ko jên", Accompanying him were three men. "T'a lai cho ti shih hou", At the time of his coming.

*Moods.*

The *Indicative Mood* has been adequately dealt with above.

The *Imperative Mood* is the same as the indicative, with or without additional words implying command, exhortation, etc.; e.g., "Lai" or "Lai pa" is Come! "Wo mên tsou pa", Let us go! "Chiao t'a ch'ü", Tell him to go.

The *Infinitive Mood* is the same as the Indicative, usually of course accompanied by some main verb; e.g., "Wo yüan i ch'ü", I am willing to go.

The *Conditional Mood* again is as the Indicative, usually preceded by a word or phrase implying Condition, such as doubt, fear, probability, uncertainty, etc.; e.g., "Jo shih t'a ch'ing ni, ni chiu ying tang ch'ü", If he

Other Auxiliary Verbs like "lai", 來, "ch'ü", 出 "tao", 到, "liao", 了, "shang", 上, "hsia", 下 "chao", 着, "tiao", 掉, are all found in the text, in combination with main verbs.

The student will note particularly the frequent references in the Dialogue Notes to the way in which these auxiliaries express possibility or impossibility of the completion of the action of the main verb.

Note further that "tê", 得, when used as an auxiliary, carries with it a sense of "oughtness", "fitness", etc.

The Passive Voice. This is most commonly expressed by the words "chiao", written either 隱 or 敷, but chiefly 敷; by "pei", 被, or "shou", 受, and less frequently "ai", 挨.

Examples are as follows:—
1. Na hsieh tung hsi pei huo shao la. Those things were burned by fire.
2. Wo ti mao tzu chiao fêng kua la. My hat was blown off by the wind.
3. Yeh su shou jên ti ling ju. Jesus was insulted by men.
4. Na t'iao kou ai liao ta. That dog was beaten.


The principal Negatives are "pu", 不 and "mu", 沒 also pronounced "mei" or "mo". The student will be helped by knowing that "pu" is usually used with "shih", to be, while "mu" is used with "yu". The
common uses of these negative particles are illustrated below:—

1. Chê ko shih ni ti pu shih. Is this yours or not?
2. Pu shih wo ti. It is not mine.
3. Ni yu shu mei yu. Have you a book?
5. T'a lai pu lai. Is he coming?
6. T'a pu lai. No, he is not.
7. T'a ch'ü la mei yu. Has he gone?
8. T'a hai mei yu ch'ü. No, he has not gone yet.

Note that "ma" is often used for "mei yu" in questions; e.g., "T'a lai la ma (mei yu)", Has he come? "Ni yu i p'i ma ma (mei yu)", Have you a horse?

The ordinary way of expressing Prohibition is to use a phrase like "Pu yao", 不要, Do not, often shortened into "Pih", 别, or "Pu k'o", 不可, "Pu kai", 不該 or very strongly, "Ch'ien wan pu k'o", 千萬不可; e.g., "Ni pu yao kao su t'a", Don't tell him. "Pih tsou", Don't go! "Chê ko hua, ni ch'ien wan pu k'o ho t'a shuo ", On no account must you tell him this, etc.

15. Either ... or. Neither ... nor.

The most common way of expressing these alternatives is as follows:—或 ... 或. 也不 ... 也不.

"Ni huo ch'ü huo pu ch'ü, tê na ting chu i ", You must make up your mind either to go or not (whether to go or not).

"Wo yeh pu yao chan, yeh pu yao tso ", I neither want to stand nor sit. Note that sometimes the first "yeh" is omitted, but the sense is the same.

The above are the main grammatical points in the Chinese language which will form a guide to the beginner in understanding and framing sentences. This section by no means exhausts all the rules which a careful speaker of Chinese consciously or unconsciously observes. The language is so flexible and free that rules may or may
not be observed. Practically everything that has been said above, or in the Notes which accompany the Dialogues, on the subject of Grammar, is open to modification. But the student will at least have observed from what has been written that there is such a thing as Chinese Grammar!
CHARACTER INDEX IN THE WRITTEN FORM
CHARACTER INDEX IN THE WRITTEN FORM

The 1,200 odd characters included in the Dialogues are reproduced in this Section, in the written form, with the Romanised equivalent, tone mark, and main meanings alongside.

Chinese characters, when written, differ in several respects from the printed forms. It is therefore useful for the student, at the very beginning of his studies, to become acquainted with the written forms.

In the Vocabularies accompanying the Dialogues and Exercises the printed form of the characters is used. By comparing these with the written equivalents the student will readily discern the differences and be ready to tackle a simple Chinese letter.

I strongly recommend the student to learn to write the Chinese characters in the form in which they are found in this Section. I think the effort will be found to be worth while, not only in the greater interest and pleasure which will result, but also in the help to memory which writing the characters affords.

The following hints will guide and help the student in this branch of the study. As is well known, the writing of Chinese characters is an art, just as much as the painting of pictures. So Chinese writers use the brush (mao pi), as only by that means can the artistic possibilities of the characters appear. But nowadays large numbers of the younger generation of Chinese students use fountain pens. Students of this book who have artistic gifts should get accustomed to using the brush. But probably the great majority will be content to use the fountain pen. Get one with a soft nib, which will allow of gradation of thick and thin in the strokes, and also permit of a flowing free-hand style. Even a good
lead pencil of the right quality can serve quite well in
the early stages, until the student has mastered the form
and proportion of the characters.

If you use the brush you will of course use Chinese
ink, rubbed with water on a slab.

First copy the characters just as they are in the index
by placing a piece of tracing or other transparent paper
over them. This will give you good style from the start.
To write accurately and nicely it is important to write
the different strokes of each character in the proper order.
There are rules to guide the student in this respect, to
which as usual there are some exceptions.

Chinese teachers habitually say that all the strokes
required to form any character are found in the character
"yung", which means "Eternal", and which is written

永

However, as W. Simon points out in his book "How
to Study and Write Chinese Characters", at least fifteen
different strokes, some of which are slight variants of
others in the group, are readily discernible. These fifteen
strokes, as given by Simon, are as follows:—

— ⽣ ⽣ ⽣ ⽣ ⽣ ⽣ ⽣ ⽣ ⽣ ⽣ ⽣ ⽣ ⽣ ⽣ ⽣ ⽣

It is customary to write top before bottom strokes,
left before right, and horizontals before verticals. But
in cases where the top horizontal stroke is connected
with a right hand vertical, and a left hand vertical also
forms part of the character, it is usual to write the left
hand vertical stroke first. Then it is also important to
remember that the closing stroke of squares or quadri-
laterals is the bottom horizontal, and this always comes
last. These few rules, to which there are some excep-
tions, should suffice to guide the student in his early
writing lessons.

* "How to Study and Write Chinese Characters", W. Simon,
pub. by Lund, Humphries, a book which the writer heartily com-
mends to the student.
E.g., if we want to write the character “k’ou”, for mouth, which is written 口, the order of strokes is 1. 1, 2. 1, 3. 一; and in “li”, 里, Chinese mile, the order is 1. 丄, 2. 丄, 3. 一, 4. 一, 5. 一, 6. 一, 7. 一.

Write each character several times before proceeding to fresh ones. You will gradually discover that certain parts of many characters recur frequently. These are probably I. Radicals, of which there are 214, a list of which follows the Character Index, and which give a clue to the meaning, or II. Phonetics, of which Soothill, for instance, selects 888, and which afford a clue to the sound of the character. By this type of analysis we trace the characters in the dictionaries, as will be pointed out in the final Section. By this means also the student will be able to group the characters into classes, either according to Radical or Phonetic, which will accelerate progress in learning to write and read large numbers of characters.

E.g., as an interesting test, pick out from the Index all those characters in which you can detect the Radical “mu”, 木, wood, or tree, or again the Radical “chin”, 金, metal, “yǔ”, 雨, rain, etc., and note how the rest of the character indicates differences in species while the genus remains the same, or akin.

Likewise trace common Phonetics like 者, “chu”, the characters 猪, pig, 諸, all, 煮, boil, etc.

Or again, “ch’ing”, 青, in 情, disposition, 清, pure, 請, invite.

In these ways the burden of memorising will be greatly lightened and keener interest developed.

The Index to the characters in written form follows.

† “The Students’ Four Thousand Characters and General Pocket Dictionary”, W. E. Soothill, M.A.
Characters 1—20

Ti
Number, degree.
Used to introduce ordinal numbers.

Pu
No. Not.

Chih
To know.

K’o
Task, Exercise.

Tao
Way, Truth.

Men
Door, Gate.

Ch’ü
To go.

K’an
To look, To look at To think. To consider.

Yu
There is, there are. Has, have.

Yung
Need, Use.

Jên
Man.

Chiao
To call, cause, order.

Shui
Who, Whom.

Lung
Eminent. Prosperous.

Wo
I, Me

Fu
Happiness.

Shih
Is, are, am, etc.

Ai
An exclamation.
來吧先生貴姓李王在家

嗎請進好了呀張都坐謝

Lai ²  
To come.

Ma ¹  
Interrogative.

Ch'ing ³  
Invite, please, call, engage.

Chin ⁴  
Enter, advance.

Hao ³  
Good, well, complete.

Liao, Lo, La ³  
To end, finish.  
Sign of past tense.

Ya ¹  
Particle.  
Exclamation, initial or final.

Chang ¹  
A surname.  
Also classifier of nouns.

Tu, Tou ¹  
Both, all, together.

Tso ⁴  
To sit. A seat.

Hsieh ⁴  
To thank, thanks.

Pa ⁴  
Final particle.

Hsien ¹  
Before, formerly, first.

Shêng ¹  
Born, to beget, life.  
Raw. A scholar.

Kuei ⁴  
Honourable, dear, costly.

Hsing ⁴  
Surname, clan.

Li ³  
A surname. Plum.

Wang ²  
A surname. King, prince.

Tsai ⁴  
At, in, on, present, living.

Chia ¹  
Home, house, family, class.
Characters 41–60

泡茶
To brew, soak, bubble, infuse.

Ch’a²
Tea.

Shuo¹
To speak, say, narrate.

Hua⁴
Words, language, speech.

Chiu⁴
Immediately, then, so, etc.

Ho¹
To drink.

Kan³
Dare, presume.

Tang¹
To bear, act as, ought.

Tsai⁴
Again, repeat.

Hui²
A time, a turn, able to. A society. To meet.

児
Enclitic, added to nouns, suffix.

Tui⁴
To face, pair, opposite.

Chu⁴
To dwell, to stop.

Têng³
To wait, a class.

Cho²
Particle, sign of present participle.

Tê²
Must, ought, get.

Hui²
To return, go back.

Sung⁴
To send, escort, accompany.

Na³⁴
Where, how, why? There, that.

Ti¹
Sign of possessive, 's.
Characters 61—80

Chien
To see, perceive.

Erh
Two, Second.

T'a
He, she, it.

T'ai
Too, very, superlative, exalted.

Ch’ih
To eat, used of tobacco as well as food.

Kuo
Sign of past tense, to pass over.

Fan
Rice, food.

Mei, Mu, Mo
Negative, used with the verb "Yu", to have.

Huan, Hai
Still, yet, — precedes negative.

Huo
Perhaps, if, someone.

P’ien
Deflected, on the contrary, prejudiced.

K’o
Guest, traveller.

Ch’i
Breath, air, vapour, flavour.

Li
Right, principle, arrange, fitting.

K’o
May, might, can, be able.

I
To take, by means of.

Kei, Chi
Give, for, to. Sign of dative.

Ch’i
Infuse, brew. Alternative for "p’ao".

Yü
Beforehand.

Pei
Prepare, ready.
Characters 81—100

**Chung**¹
Middle.

**Kuo**²
Country.
Kingdom.

**Ta**⁴
Big. Great.
Much.

**Tung**³
To understand.

**Chi**³
Many. How much?
How many?

**Shih**²
Time, Season.

**Tao**⁴
Arrive, reach.

**Pi**⁴
Humble, my (polite).

**Shang**⁴
The last point of
time, above, on,
go up.

**Yüeh**⁴
Month, moon.

**Ts’ai**²
Just, thereupon,
scarcely.

**Chiang**³
Praise, commend.

**Chên**¹
True, real.

**Shih**²
Solid, sincere, true,
real.

**Yung, Jung**²
Easy, contain,
face, looks.

**I**⁴
Easy.

**Hsüeh**²
Learn.

**Ping**⁴
Together, all,
abreast.

**Nan**²
Difficult.

**Yüan**⁴
Wish, willing.
Characters 101—120

I $^4$
Idea, wish, intention, meaning.

Pa $^3$
Take, take hold.
Introduces object of verb.

Chin $^4$
Limit, exhaust, utmost.

Hsin $^1$
Heart, mind.

Chiao $^1$
Teach, instruct.

Ni $^3$
You.

San $^1$
Three.

Chê $^4$
This, here.

Ko $^4$
Piece. Classifier of nouns.

Shên $^2$
What, very, any.

Mo $^1$
Interrogative particle.

Pên $^3$
Classifier of books, documents.
Root, source.

Shu $^1$
Book.

Tzŭ $^4$
Word, written word.

Tien $^3$
Constant, rule, record.

Tung $^1$
East.

Hsi $^1$
West.

Kuan $^3$
Tube, classifier of tubular things.

Ch’ien $^1$
Lead (metal).

Shih $^2$
Used for No. 111.
Characters 121—140

Pi³
Pen, pencil, brush.

Mên²
Sign of plural.

Tso⁴
To do, to make, to act.

Tso⁴
To do, to make, to act.

Nien⁴
To read aloud.

Tu²
To read.

T'ing¹
To listen, to hear.

Fa²³⁴
Method, way of doing things, law.

Tzŭ³
Son, terminal of nouns, child.

Kên¹
To follow, accompany, the heel, with.

Hsing²
To go, to do.

Hên³
Extreme, very.

Yao⁴
If, necessary, want.

Ts'o⁴
Mistake, error, wrong.

Kao⁴
Inform, accuse.

Su⁴
Inform, explain.

Hsien⁴
Now, at present.

Wan²
To finish, complete, end.

Hsieh³
To write.

Hsi³
Joy, pleased, glad.
Characters 141—160

Huan ¹
Rejoice. Take pleasure.

Shui ³
Water.

Chih ³
Paper.

Yen ²
To grind, as ink on a slab. To inquire.

K’uai ⁴
Piece.

Hsieh ³
A few, some, sign of plural, with adjectives.

Mo, Mei ⁴
Ink.

Na ²
To take.

Ho ² ⁴
With, together, harmony.

Ssǔ ⁴
Four.

Fang ¹
Square, classifier of pieces of Chinese ink.

Pei ¹
Cup, with or without handle. Glass.

Yen ⁴
Ink-slab.

As No. 156.

T’ai ²
Slab.

Wan ³
Cup, bowl, with or without handle.

Chia ¹
To add.

Fén ¹ ⁴
(1) Verbal form, to divide. (4) Part, tenth.

Tien ³
A little, point, dot.

Pieh ²
To distinguish; also “do not.”
Characters 161—180

Hu²
Kettle, pot.

Yang⁴
Pattern, way, manner.

Shao¹
To burn, bake (to boil).

Yen¹
Tobacco, snuff, smoke, opium.

As No. 164.

Chüan³
A roll, to roll up.

Yang²
Foreign, the sea, over the sea, vast.

Huo²
Fire.

Ch’ai²
Firewood, fuel.

Ch’ou¹
To draw, to pull out.

Liang³
Two, preceding nouns.

Kang¹
Steel.

Ni¹
Mark of interrogation, and final enclitic.

Mao²
Hair.

P’eng²
Companion, friend mate.

Yu³
Intimate acquaintance, friend.

P’ing²
Bottle.

Yeh³
Also.

Mai³
To buy.

Shih⁴
The market.
Characters 181—200

Ch’ang
An open place, square.

T’ien
Day, Heaven.

Li
In, inside, within.

Ming
The dawn, bright, clear, open.

‘As No. 182.

Chin
Now, the present

Mai
To sell.

T’a
She.

Chieh
Street.

Kan
To do, manage, Ability.

Chê
Particle, to form adverbs, abstract nouns, etc.

Ting
Classifier of hats, caps, etc. Top, button.

Tsa
We (familiar).

Mao
Hat, cap.

Lia
Two.

Shuang
A couple, both, pair.

Wu
Five.

Hsich
Shoe.

Tso
Yesterday.

Pei
North.
Characters 201—220

Ching ¹
Capital city.

Ch’i ³
To get up, rise, mount.

Tsou ³
To walk, to go.

Ch’ien ²
Money.

Chin ³
Tight, pressing.

Tai ⁴
To carry on the person.

Chieh ⁴
To borrow, to lend.

Ch’êng ²
Facts, affairs, feelings, nature.

Hsing ⁴
Form, appearance.

Tsên ³
How? In what way?

Hou ⁴
A period, a time, to wait, to expect.

Liu ⁴
Six.

Ch’u ²
Kitchen, cook.

Fang ²
Room, house.

Ssû ¹
An officer, to manage.

Chan ⁴
To stand, station, post, etc.

Mang ²
Busy.

Pang ¹
Help, assist.

Chü ⁴
Sentence, phrase.

Chia ¹
Utensils.
Chü¹
Utensils.

Tao¹
Knife, blade.

Ch'a¹
Fork.

T'iao²
To stir, to mix.

Mei⁴
Ink black.

Shih,² Ch'ih²
Spoon, key.

Shao²
Scoop, ladle.

Tieh²
Plate, saucer.

P'an²
Plate, dish.

Fang⁴
Put, place.

Cho¹
Table.

As No. 231.

Wan³
Evening, late.

Hsia⁴
Beneath, to descend, to begin, under.

Wu³
Noon.

To¹
Much, many.

K'ao²
To bake, roast.

Mien⁴
Flour, bread.

Pao¹
Parcel, wrap.

Huang²
Yellow.
油
Oil.

果
Fruit, consequences, etc.

蔴
Thick, paste, etc.

足
Enough, sufficient.

十
Ten.

筷
Chopsticks.

使
To employ, use.

只
Only.

筷
To fear.

倒
On the contrary, to fall over.

七
Seven.

承
To receive.

問
To inquire, ask, a question.

您
You, Sir. (A polite form.)

賤
Humble, mean, low, cheap.

尉
Title or rank, surname.

草
Gross, humble.

名
Name, fame.
Characters 261—280

Nien²
Year, years.

Chi⁴
To record.

Sui⁴
The year, years.

Shu⁴
Number, to count.

Kêng¹
Age.

Chia³
First.

Kao¹
High.

Shou⁴
Age, old age, long life.

Hsiung¹
Elder brother.

Ti⁴
Younger brother.

Hsiao³
Small, young.

Hsü¹
In vain, empty, useless.

Tu⁴
To ford, pass, pass over.

Ying¹

Nan²
South.

Ch’u³
Place, dwelling place.

Fu³
Home, residence, a prefecture.

P’ing²
Peace, level, ordinary.

Li²
Apart from, separated from.

Yüan³
Far, distance distant.
Pai, Po
Hundred.

Li
“Li” (about one-third of a mile).

Lu
Road.

Wang
Towards.

Han
Name of a dynasty. Part of Hankow.

Han
Dry, dry land.

Fei
Not, bad.

Fei
To fly.

Chi
A machine, opportunity.

Kung
Work.

Fu
A man.

Ch’ang
Usual, ordinary.

K’uai
Quick, lively.

Pa
Eight.

T’ung
Together, connected.

Kung
Together, combined.

Fu
Father.

Mu
Mother.

Ch’in
Close relationship.

Ling
Honourable.
Characters 301—320

Tsun
Honourable (used in ceremonial language).

T'ang
The hall, principal room.

Shih
The world, this life, generation.

Hsi
To pity, sympathise.

Pao
Precious, valuable.

Chüan
Family, wife.

Ch'êng
Complete, finish become.

Ting
Fix, settle.

Hun
Marriage, marry.

Chieh
To tie a knot, to join together.

Hai
Child, children.

Nan
Male (of human beings).

Wei
Classifier of persons.

Nü
Female (of human beings).

T'o
Rely upon, due to, depend on.

Hsiang
Mutual.

Lang
Prince, your son.

Ch'üan
Dog, pup.

Ai
Loved, beloved.

Ch'a
To err.

Ch'ai
To send.
Characters 321—340

Shih[^4]
Affair, matter, business.

Pan[^4]
To do, to manage.

Kung[^1]
Public, official.

Shang[^1]
Commerce.

Fêng[^4]
To join, attach oneself to.

Chiao[^1]
Instruction, Church.

Yeh[^1]
Used in transliterating.

Su[^1]
To revive.

Chi[^1]
A foundation, a base.

Tu[^1]
To oversee, to superintend.

Yin[^1]
Sound.

Mu[^4]
Shepherd, pastor.

Shih[^4]
Teacher.

Shih[^4]
Scholar.

Ch’ien[^2]
Before, formerly.

Chiang[^1]
Expound, preach.

Chiu[^3]
Nine.

Mu[^4]
Index, list, eye.

Fan[^1]
To translate, turn over.

Fan[^1]
To upset, to overturn.
Characters 341—360

Ling²
Nought, cipher.

Hsü¹
Necessary, must, wait, a moment.

Ch’ien¹
Thousand.

Pu³
Patch, repair, mend.

Wan⁴
Ten thousand.

Hsing¹
Star, spark.

T’ou²
Head, first, beginning.

Ch’i²
Date, appointed time, expect.

Pan⁴
Half.

Li³
Ceremony, courtesy, politeness.

Fên¹
A tenth, a portion.

Pai⁴
Worship, pay respect.

Chih¹
Sign of possessive.

Ch’u¹
Beginning, first.

Ti⁴
Earth, floor, locality.

Chêng⁴
Right, correct, chief, first month.

Shao³
Few, little, short of.

Mo⁴
Last, end, dust, not.

Pi⁴
Must, certainly, necessary.

La⁴
Twelfth moon, winter sacrifice.
As No. 360.

Ch’i²
He, she, it.

Yü²
Surplus.

Chih⁴
To cause, to extend to, to send.

Sui²
Comply with, according to, to follow.

Tung¹
Winter.

Ssü¹
To think on, ponder, thought.

Hsin¹
New.

Wan⁴
Enjoy, amuse, play.

I⁴
Skill, craft.

Shua³
To play, to trifle.

T'ang²
Sugar, sweets.

Mei³
Each, every.

Fên¹
A portion.

Ching¹
Pass through, manage.

Shên¹
Body, self.

Piao³
Watch.

Tan⁴
But, only, yet.

Mien⁴
Face, front, side, aspect.

Chung¹
Clock, bell.
Characters 381—400

Chin
Near.

Shih
See, look.

Yen
Eye, the eye.

Yüeh, Yo
To make an appointment, covenant, bind.

I
Sign of perfect tense.

Tan
Obstruct, delay, prevent.

Wu
To thwart, hinder.

Hsü
Perhaps, maybe.

K’ung
Fear.

K’o
A quarter, fifteen minutes.

Kan
To catch up, pursue, drive.

Kêng
Sign of comparative.

Hsia
Summer.

Pi
Avoid, escape, flee.

Fu
Summer heat.

Shu
Summer heat.

Lao
To toil, suffer, weary.

Shan
Hill, mountain.

Ts’ung
From, follow, obey.

P’a
Fear, afraid.
Characters 401—420

Hsien²
Leisure, idle.

Ai⁴
To love, to like.

Ta³
To beat, strike, to play at . . .

Wang³
Net.

Ch’iu⁴
Ball.

P’ai³
Cards, dominoes.

P’ai²
To beat, clap, etc.

Tso⁴
Classifier of clocks, etc.

Man⁴
Slow.

Kai³
Alter, change.

Chun³
Standard.

Hsiu¹
Repair, put in order.

Nêng²
Can, able.

Wei²
Because, do, make, be.

Kuei¹
Rule, fix.

T’i⁴
For, instead of substitute.

Jên⁴
To recognise, to acknowledge.
Chiang⁴
An artisan.

Chi³
Self, personal.

Ting⁴
Fix, settle, certain.

P'an²
Plate, board, a classifier.

Hou⁴
After, later.

Ch'i²
Chess.

Chia⁴
Chariot, progress.

Kuang⁴
Stroll, visit.

Tsui⁴
Most, very.

Chên¹
Needle, needlework.

P'ei²
To accompany, entertain.

As No. 435.

T'ou²
The head, the beginning.

Hsien⁴
Thread, needlework.

Kai⁴
All, general.

As No. 437.

Pien⁴
 Convenient.

P'ien⁴ Cheap.

T'an²
To chat, gossip, talk.

Tzǔ⁴
Self, natural, from.

As No. 439.
夜
Window.

Ch'uang
A hole, opening, screen.

Kuan
To close, bar, put to.

Ping
Disease, illness.

Fa
To produce, become.

Ch'ao
Damp, humid, tide.

K'uang
Frame.

Feng
A seam, split, crack.

Mu
Wood, timber.

鎖
Lock, to lock.

锈
Rust, to rust.

鍼
A key.

试
To try, to test, experiment.

涂
To grease, to oil, smear.

開
To open.

敞
To open, wide open, disclose.

偷
To steal, a thief.

嗎
Interrogative particle.

塞
Cork, stopper.
Characters 461—480

取 (Ch’ü) ²
To take off or out.

Ch’u ¹
To come or go out, to produce.

Ho ²
To close, to pair, side by side.

筒 (T’ung) ²
A tin, a container.

費 (Fei) ⁴
Waste, expend.

合 (Ting) ¹
A nail, to nail.

式 (Ch’üan) ²
Perfect, complete, all.

螺 (Ch’ien) ²
Pincers, tongs.

總 (Shih) ⁴
Pattern, shape, fashion.

向 (Lo) ²
Conch, small screw.

全 (Tsung) ³
All, general.

轉 (Ssū) ¹
Wire, thread.

箱 (Chuan) ³
To turn.

向 (Hsiang) ¹
Box.

箱 (Hsiang) ⁴
Facing toward, to or from.

轉 (Hsia) ²
Small box, crate.

向 (Yüan) ²
Courtyard, garden.

箱 (Ching) ³
A well.

盒 (Ho) ²
A tin or box, casket.

井 (Kai) ⁴
To cover.
Characters 481—500

清早桶盛满所缸装髤

Ch'ing
Dawn, daybreak.

Tsaö
Early.

T'ung
A bucket, a barrel.

Ch'êng
To fill, to hold.

Shêng
Abundant.

Man
Full, to fill.

So
The relative pronoun. A place, that which.

Kang
A butt, large vessel for water, etc.

Chuang
To fill up, to pack, to contain.

Tsang
Dirty, filthy.

Liu
To leave, to retain, keep.

件
An article, an item.

A classifier.

Wang
To forget.

Chi
To remember.

Pien
A side, an edge.

K'ü
Bitter.

T'ien
Sweet.

Chu
To boil, to cook.

Pan
To move, to remove.

Lou
A second storey, tower.

Tung
To move. To exc.

A classifier.
Characters 501—520

Chih 4
Extreme. Reach to. Utmost.

Chung 3
Seed, grain. A kind or sort.

Ku 4
To hire.

Chung 4
Heavy, cumbersome.

T’ai 2
To carry between two or more persons.
To raise.

Hsiu 1
Rest, recuperate, relax.

Chi 4
To help, save, up to the mark.

Hsi 2
Rest, to rest.

Suan 4
To reckon, calculate.

Hsieh 1
To rest, ease off.

Jan 2
Certainly, really, still, although.

I 3
A chair, couch.

Sao 3
To sweep.

K’ung 1
Empty.

Yüan 4
A courtyard, a hall.

Hsiang 3
To think, reflect.

Shou 1
To receive, collect, gather.

Wai 4
Outside. Foreign.

Shih 2
Arrange, pick up.

Lao 3
A long time. Old.
Tiu ³
To leave.

Yin ¹
A cellar, underground. Secret.

T‘iao ²
Classifier of long things.

T‘eng ¹
To rise, to mount, to begin.

Tiao ⁴
To change round, turn round.

Jang ⁴
To allow, permit.

Huan ⁴
To change.

Kan ¹
Dry, clean.

Ching ⁴
Clean.

Pu ⁴
Calico, cotton cloth.
To notify, to publish.

T‘ing ¹
Court, Hall.

Hsiao ³
To know.

Fên ¹
To order, command.

Fu ⁴
To commission, order.

T‘an ³
Carpet, felt.

Hsi ²
Mat, reed mat.

Ch‘i ⁴
A vessel, a utensil, implements.

Hsi ³
To wash, bathe, rinse.

Tuan ¹
A beginning. A clue. To serve.

Ling ²
Clever, active, adjust.
Li
Lively, quick, smart.

Chêng
To set in order, to repair, adjust.

Ch‘i
Even, regular. To arrange.

Yü
In, on, at, from. Than.

Chin
A catty, one and a third lbs.

Li
The 1000th part of a Chinese foot; 1000th part of a "tael".

Ch‘êng
To weigh, call, style.

Kuo
To bind, wrap.

Liang
To measure, to deliberate. To buy, as grain.

Liang
Grain, food.

Shih
A stone.

Tan
A bushel.

Tou
A peck.

Shêng
A pint.

Tai
Bag, sack.

Ch‘ih
A foot.

Ts‘un
An inch.

Pai
White, clear, in vain.

Wên
Literature, elegant.

Pu
Pace, step, five feet.

I
Idea, intention, meaning, wish.
Characters 561—580

思
思

Ssu¹
Think on, ponder, thought.

界
界

Chieh⁴
The world, boundary.

材
材

K’u⁴
Trousers.

記
記

Chi⁴
To record, to remember, a sign.

料
料

Ts’ai²
Materials.

錄
錄

Lu⁴
To record, copy.

界
界

Liao⁴
Materials, calculate.

破
破

P’o⁴
Break, solve.

釣
釣

K’uan¹
Wide, broad, easy.

聯
聯

Tieh²⁵
Saucer.

肉
肉

Hsia²
Narrow.

湯
湯

Jou,⁴ Ju⁴
Meat.

錦
錦

Pi³
To compare.

湯
湯

T’ang¹
Soup, gravy.

跑
跑

Pu⁴
Cloth, to spread.

羊
羊

Chi¹
Chicken.

世
世

P’ao³
To run, to gallop.

魚
魚

Yang²
Sheep.

跑
跑

Shih⁴
The world, a generation.

魚
魚

Yü³
Fish.
猪
Pig, pork.

排
Chops.

骨
Chops.

热
Hot.

凉
Cool, pleasant.

菜
Vegetables, food.

腿
Leg, thigh, ham.

片
Sliced, a slice, a strip.

牛
A cow.

舌
Tongue.

土
Earth.

豆
Beans.

菠
Spinach.

熟
Ripe, soft, properly cooked.

啦
A final particle.

水
Ice.

淇
Name of a river used in transliteration.

林
To drip. Used in transliteration.

奶
Milk, curdled milk, cheese.

饼
Cake, slab.
Characters 601—620

Chia
Used in transliteration.

Fei
Used in transliteration.

P'ing, P'in
Apple.

Li
Pears.

P'u
The vine, a grape.

T'ao
Grapes.

Chiu
Wine.

Lü
A tube.
The Philippines.

Sung
Name of a dynasty.

Chieh
Forbid, prohibit.

Pai
To spread, to lay on table.

Chao
To seek, to look for.

Ma
An old woman, a mother, a waiting woman.

Ling
Separate.

Hsien
Salt. Brackish.

Yen
Salt.

Hu
Pepper.

Chiao
Pepper.

Ts'ū
Vinegar.

Chieh
Mustard.
Characters 621—630

牙

Ya
Tooth, teeth.

言

Yen
Words, speech.

Ch’ien
Bamboo-slip.

Tien
An inn, a shop.

Ch’ē
Cart, carriage, vehicle.

Chao
According to. To illumine.

Liang
Classifier of vehicles.

Chiu
Old—of time, persons, etc.

Lun
To discuss, according to.

Yüeh
The more, comparative sign.

Chia
Price, value.

Li
Strength, power, force.

Ying
Ought, should, must; suitable.

Chao
A common surname.

Kai
Ought, should. To owe.

Chieh
An elder sister. A young lady.

Tso
To make, To do, To be, To act as.

Shih
To know, to recognise.

Pa
To cease. A final particle. Sign of imperative.

Ts’ai
To guess.
Lien ²
Pitiful, pity, sympathise.

T'ung ¹
Together with, altogether.

Tzu ²
Elder sister.

Mei ⁴
Younger sister.

Ko ¹
Elder brother.

Tan ¹
To carry with a pole over the shoulder. To sustain.

Fu ⁴
To bear, to sustain. To carry on back.

Tsê, ² Chai ²
Burden of office, responsibility.

Jên ⁴
Office, the care or burden of office.

P'an ⁴
To hope for, to expect.

Wang ⁴
To expect, hope. To gaze at.

T'o ³
Satisfactory.

Lien ³
Face.

Mao ⁴
Appearance, form.

Ch'i ³
How, how can it be?

Ch'i ⁴
Relatives.

Tsui ⁴
Sin, crime, offence, offend.

Wu ²
Without, apart from. A negative.

Ho ²
How, why.

K'uang ²
Lies, false.
Characters 661—680

P'êng ⁴
To meet with. To come across. To hit upon.

Hsiang ²
Details.

Chu ³
Opinion, lord, master.

P'ei ⁴
Wear at waist, respect.

Fu ²
Clothes, to wear. To serve, to be willing.

Shih ¹
To lose, to err.

Hsin ⁴
To believe in, to trust. A letter.

Ch'ou ²
Reward, bestow.

T'i ²
To lift in the hand; to raise, to mention.

Chü ⁴
According to.

T'ing ³
To stick out, stiff.

Huai ⁴
Bad, vicious, ruined.

Ch'iang ²
Strong, superior, violent.

Tuan ³
Short.

Tai ³
Bad.

Yen ²
Colour, face.

Sê, Shai ⁴
Colour, beauty.

No ²
To move.

Kên ¹
Classifier of sticks.
Characters 681—700

Kun ⁴
Staff, stick.

Ts'ū ¹
Broad, thick (or round things).
Coarse.

Huo ⁴
Goods, wares.

Wu ⁴
Things, goods.

Ma ³
Horse.

La ¹
To pull, drag.

Wu ¹
Room in a house.
House.

Tui ¹
Heap, pile, to pile up.

Chang ¹
To control, palm of hand.

Kuei ⁴
Shop counter, cupboard.

Kung ¹
Reverence, offer.

Fa ¹
To issue, to send, to manifest.

Ts'ai ²
Wealth, riches.

Ch'ou ²
Manufactured silk.

Tz'ū ⁴
Inferior, second-rate, next.

Fêng
Classifier of letters, cover, seal, envelope.

Ling ³
Receive, lead.

Nai ⁴
Endure, bear.

Chiu ³
Old, long time.

Wei ⁴
Not yet.
Characters 701—720

Mien
Avoid, remit.

Ch’uan
To wear, to put on.

Shao
Somewhat, slight.

Lan
Lazy, indolent, reluctant.

Wei
Small, minute, slight.

Wên
Mosquito.

P’ien
Cheap.

Chang
Curtain, net for bed.

Pien
Convenient.

Na
A final particle.

I
Right, suits, fits.

Lien
Curtain.

Sui
Supposing, though, even, still.

Ch’ing
Light (in weight).

Shê
Let go, relinquish.

P’u
To spread.

Hua
To spend. A flower.

Chieh
Solid, strong, reliable, real.

Chang
Measure of length—about 10 English feet.

Ju
Mattress.

Ts’ai
To cut, to cut out, to plan.
Characters 721—740

Hsi ⁴
Connected with, concern, involve.

An,⁴ Ngan ⁴
Dark, secret.

Chang ⁴
Account, bill.

Têng ¹
Lamp.

Hao ⁴
A mark, a sign, a name or style.

Chan ³
Classifier of lamps.

Pî ²
Leather, skin.

Liang ⁴
Bright, light.

Tang ³
To resist, to ward off.

An, ¹⁴ Ngan ¹⁴
To fix, place. Rest, peace.

Ni ²
Mud, slush.

Tien ⁴
Electricity, lightning.

Shu ¹
Comfortable at ease.

Chih ¹
Branch, classifier of candles, pens, etc.

Hsing ¹
Rise, prosper.

La ⁴
Wax.

Huo ³
Assistant, band, company.

Chu ²
Candle.

Chi ⁴
To reckon, to calculate.

Tou ³
To shake, shudder.
Characters 741—760

Tieh ¹
To fold up, a fold.

Ch’uang ³
Bed, classifier of blankets, etc.

T’an ¹
Coal.

T’ang ³
To recline, lie down.

Mei ²
Coal.

Han ⁴
Perspiration.

Lu,² Lou ²
Stove, brazier.

T’i ⁴
Drawer, in a table, etc.

Ko ²
Partition.

Yao,⁴ Yo ⁴
Drugs, medicines.

Pi ⁴
Screen, partition, wall.

As No. 755.

Chūeh,² Chiao ²
To feel, to be conscious of.

K’o ¹
Classifier of pills, seeds, pearls, etc.

Lêng ³
Cold.

Mieh ⁴
To put out, as a lamp, etc. To destroy.

Yang ²
The sun, male principle, south.

Shui ⁴
To sleep, slumber.

Jung ²
Wool, woollen.

Tsao ³
To bathe the body.
Characters 761–780

T'ien¹
To add to, increase.

Kua¹
To scrape, to shave.

Fa²
Fatigued, tired.

Wên¹
Warm, mild, to warm up.

Shou³
Hand, hands.

Ch'êng²
The city.

Huo²
Living, livelihood, lively.

Ch'êng²
Capacity; a journey, a career.

Jih⁴
Day, the sun.

Chêng⁴
To earn.

Mien³
To rouse oneself, make an effort.

I¹
Clothing, to dress.

K'ü¹
Hole, cave.

Lung³
Hole, cave.

Shan¹
Shirt.

Chê ²
To tear, rend, to fold.

Tsê,⁴ Ssu⁴
Private, closet.

So³
A place, a cause.

Kuei¹
Revert to, to belong to.

Ch'ang⁴
Usual, ordinary, constant.
Characters 781—800

馬 3  
Horse.

Ts' a 1  
To rub, polish.

銀 銀 2  
Silver, money.

Po 1  
Glass.

居 居  
To dwell.

千 千  
Concern.

干 干  
To analyse, examine, to be particular about.

衛 卫  
To guard, protect.

各 各  
Each, every, all.

据 碎  
Hinder, obstruct.

妨 碎  
Hinder, stand in the way.

各 各  
As No. 797.

各 各  
To dust, polish, rub with the hand.

鄰 邻  
Mirror.

掛 玻璃  
Neighbouring, neighbour.

掛 玻璃  
Dust, small particles.

掛 玻璃  
Ch'en 2  
Dust, small particles.

掛 玻璃  
Lin 2  
Neighbouring, neighbour.
切 Ch’ieh¹
All, everything.

Kua¹
To blow.

Fêng¹
The wind.

Yû³
Rain.

Pu⁴
Account book.

Tan⁴
Egg, egglike.

Yû⁴
The taro and other edible tubers.

Hung²
Red.

Lo²
Carrots.

Pei²
Carrots.

鴨 Ya¹
Duck.

Yeh³
Wild, rustic.

Chi¹
The fair, to gather together.

Lo,⁴ Lao⁴
To come down, to fall, as prices, etc.

Shang¹
To injure, to catch (cold).

I¹
To heal, cure.

Shêng⁴
Remainder, left over.

Nao³
The brain.

Ch’ien⁴
To be short, to owe.

Hun⁴
Confused.
P'ù³
Universal.

Ch'ih²
Pool, pond.

T'í²
To mention, subject of discourse.

Kang¹
Just now, just then.

Chiao⁴
A sedan chair.

Ch'ì²
To ride astride.

Shèng¹
An animal, cattle.

Pu⁴
A step, pace, on foot.

Tien¹
Upset, jolting, bumpy.

P'o⁴
Winnow, used, of the jolting movement.

Li⁴
Sharp, severe, oppress.

Hai⁴
Hurt, injure.

San³
Umbrella, parasol.

K'ên³
Willing, prone to.

P'ao³
To run, also to walk (long distances).

Lü³
Travel, journey.

Kuan¹
Hostel, hotel.

T'ing²
To halt, stop.

P'ang²
By the side of, near.

K'êng¹
Pit, hollow.
Characters 841—860

As No. 837.

Ts’un ¹
Village.

P’iao ⁴
Ticket, voucher.

T’ang ⁴
Time, turn, track, classifier of trains.

Ts’an ¹
To dine, a meal.

Ch’ao ³
Fry, roast.

T’ung ²
Copper, copper coins.

Kuang ¹
Light.

Ching ³
Circumstances, prospect.

Chü ²
Position, plan.

Hsiang ⁴
Like, image.

Pien ⁴
To change, alter.

Yün ⁴
To transport, move, revolve, luck.

Tui ⁴
A company, as of soldiers.

Wu ³
Rank of five, military.

Hsiao ¹
To disperse.

Hsi ²
Breathe, interest, news.

Hsin ¹
New, recent, fresh.

Wên ²
To hear, to smell.

K’ao ⁴
Rely, reliable trust.
Characters 861—880

Yao³
Lies, false.

Ch’uan²
Boat, ship.

Chan⁴
Fight, war, alarmed.

Chi²
Haste, urgent.

K’u³
Bitter, sorrow.

Hsing⁴
Felicitous, fortunate.

Chi²
The extreme limit.

K’uei¹
Lucky, luckily.

Chün¹
Army, military forces.

Yün⁴
Dizzy.

Fa²
Rank, class.

Kuan⁴
To be accustomed to.

K’uo⁴
Expand, extend.

Mei³
Beautiful, admirable.

Ch’ung¹
To fill.

Tzǔ²
Rich (in sense of flavour).

Yo¹
An exclamation.

Wei⁴
Taste, flavour.

Hsien⁴
District of administration, county town.

Wên³
Steady, firm, secure, stable.
Characters 881—900

波浪
Po ¹
Waves of the sea.

波浪
Lang ⁴
Waves of the sea.

騰
T'êng
To rise up, to mount.

揎
Yao ²
To roll, as a ship.

As No. 817.

海
Hai ³
The sea, maritime, vast.

碼
Ma ³
Docks, jetty.

希
Hsi ¹
Hope, rare, few.

轉
Chuan ³
Revolve, to turn.

轉
Chuan ¹
Brick.

轉
Tsuan ¹
To bore, awl, gimlet.

俗
Su ²
Common, vulgar.

話
Yü ³
Words, language, proverb.

硬
Ying ⁴
Hard.

思
Ssu ¹
To think, to consider.

思
Erh ³
Ear.

思
To ³
Ear, pendant, classifier of pendent things.

聾
Lung ²
Deaf, to be deaf.

睛
Ching ¹
Eye, iris, pupil.

聾
Ch’iang ²
A wall.
瞎

Hsia

Mien

Blind.

Cotton, cotton wool.

Ya

P’ao

Dumb.

Long gown.

Pa

Ao, Ngao

Dumb.

Outer gown, lined coat.

Ko

Tai

Arm.

To wear or carry on the head.

Pei

Chê

Arm.

To cover, to screen.

Ma

Hemp, numb.

Hsiu

Mo

As No. 786.

To feel with the hand.

Shang

Wa

Clothes.

Stockings, socks.

I

Shih

Soap.

Fond of, addicted to.

Chin, Ching

Shih

Strength.

Fa

The hair of the head.

The hair of the head.
THE CHARACTERS IN WRITTEN FORM

Characters 921—940

Pien ⁴
The queue, plait.

K'ang ¹
Well, hale, hearty, peace.

Shu,¹ Su ¹
A comb, to comb.

Chien ⁴
Sturdy, strong.

Shua ¹
A brush, to brush.

Ch’iung ²
Poor, poverty-stricken.

Ch’ih ³
Teeth.

T’i ³
The body, limbs, to sympathise.

K’ou ⁴
A button, to button.

Hsü ⁴ ⁵
Pity, to sympathise.

Chih ³
The fingers, to point.

Chou ¹
To be charitable, to help.

Pao ³
To guard, protect, preserve.

Chi ⁴
To save, help, deliver.

Ch’ih ²
To preserve, hold, grasp.

Hsün ⁴
To teach, instruct.

P’ên ²
A basin, bowl, bath.

Chou ³
To keep, observe.

Chüan ⁴
A napkin, towel, handkerchief.

Chü ³
Rule.
Shêng¹
Tone, voice, repute.

Yin¹
Shady, secret. The female principle.

Shang³
Reward. Name of second tone.

Ju⁴
To enter. Name of entering tone.

Hsiao⁴
To imitate, copy.

Yü³
Words, a saying.

Ch'üan⁴
Exhort, encourage.

Hsiang⁴
Facing towards, to or from.

Ch'iu²
To implore, to seek after.

Ch'ing⁴
Really, finally.

Chiang¹
To take, hold; a leader.

T'î²
To mention, raise a matter.

Pa²
Raise, help up.

Shih⁴
Room, house, office.

Chien⁴
Gradually.

Tan⁴
Insipid, weak (as liquids).

Tai⁴
To treat, to behave.

T'ai⁴
Behaviour, bearing, attitude.

Kai³
To alter, to change.

Yüan²
Cause, reason.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Character</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ku ⁴</td>
<td>Cause, reason.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hou ⁴</td>
<td>Generous, thick.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Po ², Pao ²</td>
<td>Mean, stingy, thin.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>K'un ⁴</td>
<td>Straitened, distressed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chien ³</td>
<td>To reduce, diminish.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hsin ¹</td>
<td>Fuel, firewood.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chi ⁴</td>
<td>Since, seeing that.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hsien ⁴</td>
<td>Limit, boundary.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ch'ien ¹</td>
<td>Humble, modest.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chên ⁴</td>
<td>Market town, mart, to guard.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ch'ang ⁴</td>
<td>To lead.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pi ⁴</td>
<td>To finish, end.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yeh ⁴</td>
<td>Course, occupation, profession.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shêng ³</td>
<td>A province, frugal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fan ⁴</td>
<td>Model, pattern.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chuang ¹</td>
<td>A farm, farmstead, the fields.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chia ⁴</td>
<td>Grain, crops, to sow.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fêng ¹</td>
<td>Luxuriant, flourishing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ching ⁴</td>
<td>Placid, calm.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yü</td>
<td>Rear, nurture.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Mai⁴, Mo⁴
Wheat.

Mi³
Millet, grain in general.

Na⁴
To pay, to take, to receive.

Liang²
Taxes, rations, grains.

Chêng⁴
Disease, ailments.

Fei³
Worthless, bandits, rebels.

Ch'ing¹
Alarm, startle, watch.

Ch'a²
To examine, investigate.

Chih²
Public office, appointment.

Mu², Mo²
Model, pattern.

Chih⁴
To cure, to treat (medically, etc.)

Chieh⁴
Introduce, announce.

Shao⁴
Introduce, hand down.

I²
Benefit, advantage.

Hsi²
Versed in, familiar, practiced.

Tsung⁴
Although, lax.

Tsun¹
To accord with, follow, obey.

Ming⁴
A command. Fate. Life.

Hsing¹
Elated, rejoice.

K'uei⁴
Ashamed.
Characters 1001—1020

Tieh ¹
To stumble, fall.

P'î ²
Spleen, disposition.

P'ēin ³
Sort, class, kind, character.

Li ⁴
To stand up, to establish.

Mo ⁴
The pulse.

P'êng ²
Pain, to be in pain.

P'īn ³
Example, pattern.

T'êng ²
Endure, restrain.

Jên ³
Pang ³

P'ei ⁴
To mix, make up, as medicines.

Ma ²
Hemp.

Hsieh ⁴
To purge, drain, diarrhœa.

Fan ²
To trouble, annoy, annoyance.

Nêng ², Nung ²
Thick, strong—of liquids.

Lo ²
Vexatious, annoyance.

Fu ⁴
A dose. Classifier of medicine doses.

So ¹
To incite, discord, mischief.

Wan ²
Pill, pills.

Chia ¹
Blows, squabble, a frame.

Fên ³
Medicinal powder, flour, meal.

Ch'ung ¹
To clash, dash against.
T'u ¹
Rush against.

Ch'ao ³
Altercation, row, noise.

Tsui ³
Lips.

Chiao ¹
Proud, arrogant.

Ao ⁴, Ngao ⁴
Haughty, proud.

Pei ¹
Low.

Nai ⁴
To endure, be patient, bear.

Jo ³
To provoke.

Ts'ung ¹
Intelligent, understanding, clever.

Shên ¹
Deep, profound, versed in.

Ju ²
Confucian, learned.

Ko ¹
To cut.

Shêng ³
Rope, string, cord.

Ts'u ¹
Coarse, rough, bulky.

Tuan ⁴
To cut off, break.

Chiao ³
To compare, to test, more than.

Chiao ³
To cut with scissors, twist, crosswise.

Chien ¹
Scissors.

Ta ²
Penetrate, inform.

Tun ⁴
Dull, blunt.
Characters 1051—1060

Mo ²
To grind, rub, mill.

Yu ²
Reason, cause.

Chi ³
To crowd together, to press.

San ⁴
To scatter, disperse.

Ch'ì ²
Strange, wonderful, rare.

Pi ³
That.

Kuai ⁴
Extraordinary, unusual, to blame.

Tzŭ ³
This.

Chang ¹
Chapter, essay.

Jang ⁴
To concede, give way, yield.

Chieh ²
Verse, section.

Pu ⁴
A step, on foot.

Yeh ⁴
Page, leaf of a book.

T'u ³
To lead.

T'o ¹
To doff the hat, take off (clothes).

Chu ¹
All.

Chu ²
To bow, bend the body.

Kuan ¹
To look on, to observe.
Characters 1061–1080

躬
The body, person.

Tso
Left.

Yu
Right.

Su
Cardinal, fundamental, ordinary.

Shih
Food.

Shu
A pivot, axis, fundamental.

Nuan
Warm, genial.

Pao
Replete, full.

Chia
Holiday.

Hsiang
The country, countryside, rural.

Tun
To stamp the foot, a time.

Yeh
Wild.

Tsan
To praise, to commend.

Shan
Flash, lightning.

Hsiang
Sound, echo. To make a noise.

As No. 1075.

Lei
Thunder.

Hsüeh
Snow.

Shuang
Frost.

Shu
Tree.
河

湖

凍

秋

霧

緞

坡

廟

塔

尚

Ho²
River.

Hu²
Lake.

Tung⁴
To freeze.

Ch’iu¹
Autumn, harvest.

Wu⁴
Mist.

Chih⁴
Scenery, view.

P’o¹
The slope of a hill.

Miao⁴
Temple, fair.

T’a³
Pagoda.

Shang⁴
Still, yet, to ascend, to be in charge of.

佛

穏

蒼

蠅

蟻

討

厭

咬

駱駝

Fo²
Buddha.

Ts’ang¹
A fly.

Ying³
A fly.

Ma³
An ant.

I³
An ant.

T’ao³
To beg, seek.

Yen⁴
Dislike.

Yao³
To bite.

Lo⁴
Camel.

T’o²
Camel.
Characters 1101—1120

Lo²
Mule.

Lü²
Donkey.

Hsiang¹
Fragrant.

Pao⁴
To nurse, carry in the arms.

Pei⁴
To carry on the back.

T'iao¹
To carry on a pole on the shoulder.

Ch'ang⁴
To sing.

Hsi⁴
Theatricals, play on stage.

Nao⁴
Noise, bustle, disturb.

Ch'en⁴
Avail of.

Yung³
To crowd or press together.

Chi³
To crowd together.

K'ang⁴
To carry on shoulder.

Ch'ien¹
To lead a horse by the bridle.

P'i³
Classifier of horses.

Ts'ai⁴
To trample or step on.

Wei¹
Dangerous.

Hsien¹
Dangerous.

Chin¹
Gold, metal

Lien⁴
To refine.
Characters 1121—1140

Kua ¹
Melon.

Tsai ¹
To plant.

Lien ²
The lotus.

Ch’êng ²
To avail of. To ascend.

Yao ²
Distant.

Niao ³
Bird.

Ch’ui ¹
To blow.

Chiu ⁴
Ancient, old.

Tz’ü ¹
A flaw, blemish.

Mou ³
To plan, devise.

Chiu ⁴
To save, deliver.

Mao ² ¹
Cat.

Chin ⁴
Near, to approach.

Ssǔ ³
Dead, to die.

Hu ³
Tiger.

Shu ³
Rat, mouse.

T’a ⁴
To step on, tread.

Shan ⁴
Good, virtuous. To perfect.

Chih ¹
Classifier of boots, shoes, etc.

Shou ³
Evil, wicked, wrong.

Wu ⁴
Hate, dislike.
报

To announce, to inform. A newspaper.

Pi

To close, to stop up.

Shih

Stone.

Tsao

To build, make.

Cha

To stick in.

Ch’i

Flag, banner.

Kan

A staff, a pole.

Ying

Shadow, image.

Hsing

To walk, to do.

Hang

A store, shop.

Hui

To exchange money.

邮政

To convey, postal service.

政府

Government, administration.

内

Inside, within.

祖

Ancestors.

肚

Stomach, belly.

饿

Hungry.

啤

Beer.

乐

Music.

广

Wide, broadcast.
Po
To spread abroad.

T'iao
To dance, jump.

Wu
To posture, brandish, dance.

Lei
Tired, fatigued.

Chü
Interesting, amusing.

Pei
Generation.

Wei
To maintain, organise.

Tsu
A clan, a tribe, to collect together.

Hsiang
The nape of the neck, an item.

Yüan
A source, original.

Ssü
Selfish, private.

Tê
Virtue, power.

T'ou
To hand in, surrender.

Chiang
To descend.

Hsiang
To surrender.

Ti
To resist.

K'ang
To resist, oppose.

Ch'in
To invade.

Liao
To plunder.

Pei
A coverlet, sign of passive.

Cha
To smash, explode.
# Characters 1181—1200

**Tan** ④
Bomb, bullet.

**Huai** ④
Ruin, destroy, spoil.

**Meng** ②
Covenant, alliance.

**Sheng** ①
Victory, conquer.

**Pai** ④
Defeat, spoil.

**Chieh** ④
Weapons.

**Ts'an** ②
Injure, cruel.

**Pao** ④
Violent, fierce, cruel.

**Shou** ④
To receive, suffer.

**Hsia** ④
Alarm, startle.

**Hsüan** ①
To proclaim.

**Tsu** ③
To organise.

**Chih** ①
To weave.

**Lien** ③
To connect, unite.

**Lu** ④
Dry land, six.

**I** ④
To discuss, consult.

**Fu** ④
Double.

**Tsa** ②
Confused, complicated.

**Ch'an** ③
Property.

**Min** ②
The people.
Characters 1201—1210

革
To change, alter.

派
Party, separate, branch.

派
Party, association, faction.

派
All, a crowd.

楚
Clear, sharp.

楚
A case, a wrapper, to harness.

班
Clear, bright.

班
A class, company.

武
Military.

武
Hail.
HOW TO USE A CHINESE DICTIONARY
FROM THE RADICALS
HOW TO USE A CHINESE DICTIONARY
FROM THE RADICALS

It has already been pointed out in the preceding Section that Chinese characters are readily analysed into two parts, Radical and Phonetic.

The Radicals number 214, while the number of Phonetics varies according to the predilection of the individual scholar. Soothill, as has already been noted, selects 888 to make up his Pocket Dictionary of Four Thousand Characters.

The list of Radicals is appended for the information of the student, and also to enable him to use it to find characters in any of the popular dictionaries designed to help the foreigner studying Chinese.

It will be noted that the Radicals are arranged in the order of the number of strokes of which they are composed.

The Radicals vary in importance according to the relative frequency with which they occur. It is desirable that the Radicals should be written out frequently and memorised, together with their number and meaning. The numbers are necessary, as dictionaries for foreign students are arranged on the principle of classifying characters under the Radicals in numerical order from 1 to 214.

In the list of Radicals appended the tones are indicated in the usual way, 1, 2, 3 and 4. But in addition another mark (*) is attached to some to indicate the fifth tone, or "Ju" shēng, to which reference is made in Dialogue 30. As the writer lived in Shansi province for eighteen years, where the "Ju" shēng is in common use, I have included this particular tone for the Radicals. The student will often find in text-books opinions expressed that the "Ju" shēng, in effect, is dying out, and that no
particular attention need be paid to it. But that is true only of certain provinces. If the student travels in the north and north-west he will hear the tone frequently used. In writing out the Chinese characters of this tone in Romanised it is usual to add an “h” to the end of the words.

A list of a few specimen characters from a dictionary is also appended, to enable the student to find characters in the dictionary from the Radicals.

First of all it is necessary to discover the Radical part of the character you wish to look up. If you have made yourself familiar with the 214 Radicals this should not present any serious difficulty. The bigger dictionaries, like Giles, give a list of characters, the Radicals of which are difficult to discover. Relatively speaking these are comparatively few.

The selected characters as appended all have Radical No. 61 in them. This is the “heart” Radical, and, as you will see, it is found in characters which express thought, emotions, personal characteristics and the like.

Notice that this particular Radical is written in three forms, only two of which, 心 and 心, are illustrated. Notice further that the position of the Radical in the characters varies. It is sometimes at the left-hand side, sometimes at the bottom, and, in one instance, in the character “ai”, 爱, to love, it is found, appropriately, at the very heart of the character.

Having found that the particular character for which we are hunting has the Radical “heart” as its root, we now count the number of strokes in the rest of the character. Note “in the rest of the character”. You do not include the strokes of the Radical itself in your reckoning.

Take for example the first character on our selected list. It is the character “nu”, 怒, anger. This has five strokes in it in addition to the Radical. So it is listed in the dictionary under the Radical No. 61, and
again under 5, the figure at the left-hand side of the character list. The same rule applies throughout.

Take another illustration from the character “k’ung”, 恐, to fear. This character has six strokes in addition to the Radical, and so is listed under 6. “Wu”, 悔 has seven, “hsi”, 惜, has eight, and “I”, 意, nine.

The numbers at the right-hand side of the character list refer to the numbers of the Phonetics, ranging from 1 to 888 in Soothill, under which the characters are classified again, with their meanings, and other characters with which they are commonly associated, making composite characters or phrases.

After the student has discovered the character from the Radical and number of strokes, he looks up the number on the right-hand side, in the body of the dictionary, and there he will find the meaning of the character and the way in which it is used.

With these illustrations and hints to guide him, the student should have no great difficulty in finding his way through a Chinese dictionary.
SPECIMEN CHARACTERS FROM SOOTHILL'S DICTIONARY

5. 怒 553—Nu. Anger.
   怕 804—P'a. Fear.
   思 379—Ssū. Think on, ponder, thought.

6. 恐 8—K'ung. To fear.
   息 853—Hsi.* Breath, sigh, interest, rest.

7. 惧 761—Wu. Neglect, hinder.

8. 惜 799—Hsi.* Pity, spare, care for.
   情 82—Ch’ing. Feelings, passion for.
   惡 247—O.* Evil, wicked, low,* hate.

9. 意 91—I. Idea, intention, meaning, wish.
   惹 182—Jo. Provoke.
   愛 411—Ai. To love, to like.
LIST OF RADICALS

Arranged in order according to the number of strokes

1 Stroke

1. — I. 1 * One, unity.
2. | K’un. 3 Downstroke.
3. 亅 Chu. 3 A point, dot.
4. ノ P’ieh. 1 * Stroke to left.
5. 乙 I. 4 * One, second of ten stems.
6. 丿 Chüeh. 2 * A hook.

2 Strokes

7. 人 Erh. 4 Two.
8. 木 T’ou. 2 Roof, cover.
9. 亖 Jên. 2 Man.
10. 亖 Jên. 2 Man, variant of 9.
11. 入 Ju. 4 * Enter.
13. 八 Chiung. 3 Limits, boundaries.
14. 下 Mi. 4 * Cover, roof.
15. 冰 Ping. 1 Ice.
16. 几 Chi. 1 Table, stand.
17. 口 K’an. 3 Receptacle.
18. 刀 台 Tao. 1 Knife.
19. 力 Li. 4 * Strength.
20. 勅 Pao. 1 To wrap.
21. Pi. 3 Spoon, ladle.
22. 篮 Fang. 1 Basket, chest.
23. 篮 Hsi. 3. Box, conceal.
HOW TO USE A CHINESE DICTIONARY

24. 十  Shih. \textsuperscript{2} * Ten.
25. 卜  Pu. \textsuperscript{3} * To divine.
26. 甲  Chieh. \textsuperscript{2} * A seal.
27. 厂  Han. \textsuperscript{4} A ledge, cliff.
28. 么  Ssu. \textsuperscript{1} Private, selfish.
29. 义  \textsuperscript{4} Tu. Again, also hand.

3 Strokes

30. 口  K'ou. \textsuperscript{3} Mouth.
31. 方  Hui. \textsuperscript{2} An enclosure.
32. 土  T'u. \textsuperscript{3} Earth.
33. 士  Shih. \textsuperscript{4} Scholar, officer.
34. 久  Chih. \textsuperscript{3} A step, advance.
35. 久  Sui. \textsuperscript{1} Walk slowly.
36. 夕  Hsi. \textsuperscript{2} * Evening.
37. 大  Ta. \textsuperscript{4} Great.
38. 女  Nü. \textsuperscript{1} Woman, female.
39. 子  Tzu. \textsuperscript{3} Son, child.
40. 阁  Mien. \textsuperscript{2} A roof.
41. 寸  Ts'un. \textsuperscript{4} An inch.
42. 小  Hsiao. \textsuperscript{3} Small.
43. 尤  尤, Wang. \textsuperscript{1} Lame.
44. 戬  Shih. \textsuperscript{1} A corpse.
45. 矢  Ch'ê. \textsuperscript{4} * A sprout.
46. 山  Shan. \textsuperscript{1} Hill.
47. 川  Ch'uan. \textsuperscript{1} Stream.
48. 王  Kung. \textsuperscript{1} Work.
49. 乙  Chi. \textsuperscript{3} Self.
50. 巾  Chin. \textsuperscript{1} Napkin.
51. 干  Kan. \textsuperscript{1} Shield.
52. 小  Yao. \textsuperscript{1} Small, tender.
53. 广  Yen. \textsuperscript{3} Roof, cover.
54. 又 Yin.³ To move on.
55. 十 Kung.³ Folded hands.
56. 弓 I.⁴ * A dart.
57. 弓 Kung.¹ A bow.
58. 之 ǔ Chi.⁴ Pig's snout.
59. 亙 Shan.¹ Plumage, streaky.
60. 亁 Ch'ih.⁴ * A step.

４ Strokes

61. 心 心 Hsin.¹ Heart.
62. 戈 Ko.¹ A spear.
63. 戸 Hu.⁴ Door, family.
64. 手 手 Shou.³ Hand.
65. 支 Chi.¹ Branch.
66. 支 支 P'u.¹ To tap, rap.
67. 文 Wên.² Literature, ornament.
68. 斗 Tou.³ A peck.
69. 斤 Chin.¹ Catty, axe.
70. 方 Fang.¹ Square.
71. 无 Wu.² Not, without.
72. 日 Jih.⁴ * Sun, day.
73. 曰 Yüeh.⁴ * To say.
74. 月 Yüeh.⁴ * Moon, month.
75. 木 Mu.⁴ * Wood, tree.
76. 木 Ch'ien.⁴ To owe, short of.
77. 止 Chih.³ To stop.
78. 步 Tai.³ Bad.
79. 受 Shu.¹ Pole-axe, kill.
80. 无 Wu.³ Do not!
81. 比 Pi.³ Compare.
82. 毛 Mao.² Hair.
83. 氏 Shih.⁴ Family, clan.
84. 气 Ch’i. Breath, vapour.
85. 水 Shui. Water.
86. 火 Huo. Fire.
87. 爪 Chao. Claws.
88. 父 Fu. Father.
89. 炎 Yao. Crosswise, intertwine.
90. 冲 Ch’iang. Frame, bed.
91. 片 P’ien. A slip, strip.
93. 牛 Niu. Ox.
94. 犬 Ch’üan. Dog.

5 Strokes

95. 玄 Hsüan. Dark, obscure.
96. 玉 Yü. Gem, jade.
97. 瓜 Kua. Melon, gourd.
98. 瓦 Wa. A tile.
100. 生 Shêng. Beget, live.
101. 用 Yung. Use.
102. 田 T’ien. Field.
103. 毛 P’i. A roll of cloth.
104. 广 Ni. Sick, disease.
105. 灾 Po. Back to back.
106. 白 Pai. White.
107. 皮 P’i. Skin.
108. 盧 Min. Dish, platter.
109. 目 Mu. Eye.
110. 矛 Mao. Halberd, lance.
111. 矢 Shih. Arrow.
112. 石 Shih. Stone.
113. 示 Shih. To indicate.
114. 内 Jou. Track, a step.
115. 禾 Ho.² Growing grain.
116. 穴 Hsüeh.⁴ A cave, hole.
117. 立 Li.⁴* To stand.

6 Strokes

118. 竹 Chu.²* Bamboo.
119. 米 Mi.³ Rice.
120. 絲, 紡 Ssu.¹ Mi.⁴* Raw silk
121. 杯 Fou.³ Earthenware.
122. 网, 縄, 縄 Wang.³ A net.
123. 羊 Yang.² Sheep.
124. 羽 Yü. Feather, wing.
125. 老 Lao.³ Old.
126. 而 Erh.² And, yet.
127. 李 Lei.³ A plough.
128. 耳 Erh.³ Ear.
129. 聿 Yü.⁴* Pencil, brush.
130. 肉 Jou.⁴* Flesh.
131. 臣 Ch'ên. A Statesman.
132. 自 Tzu.⁴ Self, from.
133. 至 Chih.⁴ Reach to.
134. 曰 Chiu.⁴ A mortar.
135. 舌 She.²* The tongue.
136. 姓 Ch’uan.³ Oppose, contradict.
137. 舟 Chou.¹ Boat.
139. 色 Sê.⁴* Colour.
140. 良 Ts’ao.³ Grass, herbs.
141. 虎 Hu.¹ Tiger.
142. 虫 Ch’ung.² Insect, reptile.
143. 血 Hsüeh.³* Blood.
144. 行 Hsing.² To go, to do.
145. 衣 衣 衣 I.¹ Clothes.
146. 丙 丙 丙 Hsi.¹ West.

7 Strokes

147. 見 Chien.⁴ See.
148. 角 Chio.² * Horn, corner.
149. 言 Yen.² Words, to speak.
150. 谷 Ku.³ * Valley, gully.
151. 豆 Tou.⁴ Beans, platter.
152. 豕 Shih.³ Pig, swine.
153. 蚣 Chai.⁴ Reptile.
154. 貝 Pei.⁴ Precious, cowrie.
155. 赤 Ch’ih.⁴ * Flesh colour, red, naked.
156. 走 Tsou.³ Walk.
157. 足 Tsu.² Foot, enough.
158. 身 Shên.¹ Body.
159. 車 Ch’ê.¹ Cart, coach.
160. 辛 Hsin.¹ Bitter, pungent.
161. 辰 Ch’ên.² Time.
162. 走 Cho.¹ * To advance, run.
163. 邑 I.⁴ City, district.
164. 酉 Yu.³ New wine, ripe.
165. 棹 Pien.⁴ Separate, discern.
166. 里 Li.³ A Chinese mile.

8 Strokes

167. 金 Chin.¹ Metal, gold.
168. 長 Ch’ang.³ Long.
169. 門 Mên.² Door.
170. 鼎 Fou.⁴ A mound.
171. 隸 Tai.⁴ Reach to.
172. 雛 Chui.¹ Short-tailed birds.
173. 雨 Yū.³ Rain.
174. 青 Ch’ing.¹ Green, blue sky.
175. 非 Fei.¹ Wrong, not.

9 Strokes

176. 面 Mien.⁴ Face.
177. 革 Ko.² * Hides.
178. 韋 Wei.² Leather, thong.
179. 非 Chiu.³ Leeks.
180. 音 Yin.¹ Sound.
181. 頁 Yeh.⁴ * A page.
182. 風 Fêng.¹ Wind.
183. 飛 Fei.¹ To fly.
184. 食 Shih.² * To eat.
185. 首 Shou.³ Head.
186. 香 Hsiang.¹ Scent, fragrance.

10 Strokes

187. 馬 Ma.³ A horse.
188. 骨 Ku.³ * Bone.
189. 高 Kao.¹ High.
190. 彫 Piao.¹ Hair.
191. 鬥 Tou.⁴ Strife.
192. 阦 Ch’ang.⁴ Aromatic herbs.
193. 鬧 Li.⁴ Cauldron, tripod.
194. 鬼 Kuei.³ Spirit, demon.

11 Strokes

195. 魚 Yū.² Fish.
196. 鳥 Niao.³ A bird.
197. 鹵 Lu.³ Rock, salt.
198. 鹿  Lu.⁴ * Deer.
199. 麦  Mai.⁴ Wheat.
200. 麻  Ma.² Hemp.

12 Strokes

201. 黃  Huang.² Yellow.
202. 穀  Shu.³ Millet.
203. 黑  Hēi.¹ Hē. Black.
204. 良  Chīh.³ Embroidery.

13 Strokes

205. 蛙  Min.³ Frog.
206. 鼎  Ting.³ Tripod.
207. 鼓  Ku.³ Drum.
208. 鼠  Shu.³ Rat.

14—17 Strokes

209. 鼻  Pi.⁵ Nose.
210. 齊  Ch’i.² Uniform, all.
211. 齒  Ch’ih.³ Teeth.
212. 龍  Lung.² Dragon.
213. 龜  Kuei.¹ Tortoise.
214. 箏  Yo.⁴ * Flute, pipe.
INDEX TO CHINESE CHARACTERS
ALPHABETICALLY ARRANGED
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CHAN</th>
<th>CHAI</th>
<th>CHAO</th>
<th>CH'AO</th>
<th>CH'ENG</th>
<th>CH'I</th>
<th>CH'IEN</th>
<th>CH'ING</th>
<th>CHIA</th>
<th>CHIA</th>
<th>CHI</th>
<th>CH'I</th>
<th>CH'ING</th>
<th>CH'IN</th>
<th>CH'O</th>
<th>CH'ANG</th>
<th>CH'EN</th>
<th>CH'IN</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>216</td>
<td>648</td>
<td>447</td>
<td>846</td>
<td>820</td>
<td>307</td>
<td>345</td>
<td>864</td>
<td>358</td>
<td>542</td>
<td>957</td>
<td>333</td>
<td>637</td>
<td>988</td>
<td>223</td>
<td>1107</td>
<td>972</td>
<td>436</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42</td>
<td>913</td>
<td>54</td>
<td>1045</td>
<td>431</td>
<td>329</td>
<td>504</td>
<td>493</td>
<td>435</td>
<td>871</td>
<td>1022</td>
<td>108</td>
<td>166</td>
<td>289</td>
<td>93</td>
<td>971</td>
<td>789</td>
<td>77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>89</td>
<td>976</td>
<td>37</td>
<td>709</td>
<td>766</td>
<td>77</td>
<td>578</td>
<td>494</td>
<td>110</td>
<td>382</td>
<td>547</td>
<td>1112</td>
<td>768</td>
<td>776</td>
<td>262</td>
<td>300</td>
<td>1069</td>
<td>251</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

TEACH YOURSELF CHINESE
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chinese Characters</th>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
<th>Pinyin</th>
<th>English Transliteration</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 匠 將 降 (421, 951, 1174) | 1046, 1186, CH'IEH 801, 347, CHIEN 61, 255, 491, 932, 955, 965, 1039 | CH'ING 364 致革枝詰治織 | 1177 侵
<p>| CH'ING 201 京 | CH’OU 170 抽 | CH'IU 405 球 | 949 求 | 1084 秋 |
| CH'IUNGG 933 窮 | CIO 55 着 | 231 棒 | 232 桌 |
| CH'OU 936 購 | CH'ING 32 請 | 208 情 | 258 清 | 717 輕 |
| CHIU 45 就 | 337 九 | 607 酒 | 634 舊 | 699 久 救 |
| CHIUS 347 助 | 497 煮 | 581 猪 | 664 主 | 739 燭 |
| CHIUS 1049 諸注 | CHU 343 標 | CH'IU 213 廚 |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CHUAN</th>
<th>CHÜEHEH</th>
<th>FEI</th>
<th>HAI</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>357</td>
<td>512</td>
<td>230</td>
<td>277</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>462</td>
<td>407</td>
<td>796</td>
<td>291</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1205</td>
<td>747</td>
<td>472</td>
<td>297</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CH'UNG</td>
<td>868</td>
<td>288</td>
<td>396</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1020</td>
<td>869</td>
<td>602</td>
<td>534</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHÜ</td>
<td>219</td>
<td>287</td>
<td>647</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>221</td>
<td>51</td>
<td>472</td>
<td>666</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>671</td>
<td>62</td>
<td>986</td>
<td>1008</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>791</td>
<td>897</td>
<td>FÉN</td>
<td>1197</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>850</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>940</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1060</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CH'UANG</td>
<td>CH'Ü</td>
<td></td>
<td>HAI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>488</td>
<td>I4</td>
<td></td>
<td>311</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>977</td>
<td>1165</td>
<td></td>
<td>832</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHUANG</td>
<td>FA</td>
<td></td>
<td>886</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>442</td>
<td>128</td>
<td></td>
<td>海</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>751</td>
<td>446</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CH'UAN</td>
<td>FÉNG</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>166</td>
<td>763</td>
<td>325</td>
<td>285</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>306</td>
<td>866</td>
<td>449</td>
<td>286</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>930</td>
<td>920</td>
<td>696</td>
<td>753</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHUNG</td>
<td>FAN</td>
<td></td>
<td>HANG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>81</td>
<td>67</td>
<td>803</td>
<td>1149</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>380</td>
<td>339</td>
<td>FO</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>511</td>
<td>340</td>
<td></td>
<td>HAO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>976</td>
<td>979</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1016</td>
<td>FÚ</td>
<td>723</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>頭</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>HÈN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>132</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II0</td>
<td>46</td>
<td>喝</td>
<td>和</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----</td>
<td>----</td>
<td>----</td>
<td>----</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIO</td>
<td>211</td>
<td>候</td>
<td>後</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II1</td>
<td>118</td>
<td>西</td>
<td>喜</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II2</td>
<td>663</td>
<td>細</td>
<td>721</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II3</td>
<td>234</td>
<td>夏</td>
<td>394</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II4</td>
<td>469</td>
<td>匝</td>
<td>566</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II5</td>
<td>1190</td>
<td>嘱</td>
<td>IHSIEN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II6</td>
<td>316</td>
<td>相</td>
<td>468</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II7</td>
<td>1075</td>
<td>1076</td>
<td>香</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II8</td>
<td>IHSIAO</td>
<td>271</td>
<td>小</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II9</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>謝</td>
<td>139</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>IHSIUNG</td>
<td>269</td>
<td>兄</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIV</td>
<td>IHSÜ</td>
<td>272</td>
<td>虛</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>IHSÜAN</td>
<td>1191</td>
<td>宣</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIV</td>
<td>IHSÜEH</td>
<td>97</td>
<td>學</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>IHSÜN</td>
<td>938</td>
<td>訓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IHU</td>
<td>IHSING</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>姓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IHU</td>
<td>873</td>
<td>幸</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIV</td>
<td>IHSI</td>
<td>417</td>
<td>修</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIV</td>
<td>HUA</td>
<td>708</td>
<td>花</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IHU</td>
<td>673</td>
<td>壞</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IHU</td>
<td>IHSANG</td>
<td>369</td>
<td>兄</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IHU</td>
<td>69</td>
<td>還</td>
<td>141</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IHU</td>
<td>HUANG</td>
<td>240</td>
<td>黃</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIV</td>
<td>IHS</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>會</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIV</td>
<td>HUI</td>
<td>390</td>
<td>咖</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IHU</td>
<td>HUN</td>
<td>808</td>
<td>紅</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IHU</td>
<td>HUO</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>或</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>168 火货</td>
<td>683 货</td>
<td>729 货</td>
<td>767</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>769 日</td>
<td>769 日</td>
<td>101 货</td>
<td>1028 惹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>420 認</td>
<td>649 任</td>
<td>456 開</td>
<td>47 敢</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1014 忍</td>
<td>506 1</td>
<td>680 根</td>
<td>60 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>135 告</td>
<td>267 高</td>
<td>3 课</td>
<td>3 课</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>225 疑</td>
<td>265 庚</td>
<td>393 更</td>
<td>840 坑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1121 瓜</td>
<td>1121 瓜</td>
<td>1121 瓜</td>
<td>1121 瓜</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>246</td>
<td>293</td>
<td>595</td>
<td>183</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kuan</td>
<td>K'un</td>
<td>Lan</td>
<td>Lai</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>119</td>
<td>444</td>
<td>712</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>837</td>
<td>841</td>
<td>738</td>
<td>279</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>876</td>
<td>1050</td>
<td>686</td>
<td>282</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>681</td>
<td>964</td>
<td>355</td>
<td>1120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>990</td>
<td>323</td>
<td>541</td>
<td>1122</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>棍</td>
<td>公</td>
<td>546</td>
<td>1194</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>慣</td>
<td>懐</td>
<td>604</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>觀</td>
<td>外</td>
<td>636</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1050</td>
<td>290</td>
<td>785</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>565</td>
<td>296</td>
<td>831</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>宽</td>
<td>1061</td>
<td>1012</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kuan</td>
<td>K'un</td>
<td>Lia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>434</td>
<td>389</td>
<td>818</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>848</td>
<td>517</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1160</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>K'uan</td>
<td>K'ung</td>
<td>Lao</td>
<td>Liang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>448</td>
<td>398</td>
<td>398</td>
<td>171</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>框</td>
<td>劳</td>
<td>劳</td>
<td>量</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>660</td>
<td>520</td>
<td>549</td>
<td>550</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>誠</td>
<td>老</td>
<td>棚</td>
<td>冰</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kuei</td>
<td>K'uo</td>
<td>Lei</td>
<td>Leng</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>867</td>
<td>657</td>
<td>748</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>貴</td>
<td>棚</td>
<td>雷</td>
<td>冷</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>410</td>
<td>1164</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>规</td>
<td>累</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>690</td>
<td>734</td>
<td>564</td>
<td>585</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>櫃</td>
<td>亮</td>
<td>料</td>
<td>采摘</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>779</td>
<td>614</td>
<td>1178</td>
<td>624</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>归</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>K'uei</td>
<td>La</td>
<td>Li</td>
<td>Lien</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>874</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>641</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>虧</td>
<td>李</td>
<td>李</td>
<td>懈</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>744 煉</td>
<td>184 賣</td>
<td>MIAO 1088 廟</td>
<td>NEI 1153 內</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LU</td>
<td>981 麥</td>
<td>1041 磨</td>
<td>NÊNG 418 能</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>283 路</td>
<td>MAN 414 慢</td>
<td>MIEH 758 滅</td>
<td>1007 爆</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>573 錄</td>
<td>485 滿</td>
<td>MIEN 238 麪</td>
<td>NI 106 你</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>774 煉</td>
<td>MANG 217 忙</td>
<td>MIN 379 面</td>
<td>173 呢</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>899 鼎</td>
<td>MAO 174 毛</td>
<td>701 免</td>
<td>726 泥</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LUN 625 讀</td>
<td>197 帽</td>
<td>771 勉</td>
<td>NIAO 鳥</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LUNG 18 隆</td>
<td>654 貌</td>
<td>450 木</td>
<td>NIEN 125 唸</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>724 隆</td>
<td>1136 貓</td>
<td>991 模</td>
<td>261 年</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LÜ 608 呂</td>
<td>MEI 144 墨</td>
<td>NA 59 那</td>
<td>NIN 254 您</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>836 旅</td>
<td>373 每</td>
<td>154 拿</td>
<td>NIU 589 牛</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1102 驢</td>
<td>644 妹</td>
<td>715 哪</td>
<td>NO 679 撇</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MA 31 嗎</td>
<td>743 煤</td>
<td>983 納</td>
<td>NÜA 295 唸</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>613 嗎</td>
<td>877 美</td>
<td>NAI 599 奶</td>
<td>312 男</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>685 驞</td>
<td>NÊNG 418 能</td>
<td>698 耐</td>
<td>NAO 818 腦</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>887 驞</td>
<td>999 命</td>
<td>NAN 99 難</td>
<td>NUAN 1067 暖</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>906 驢</td>
<td>MING 192 明</td>
<td>275 南</td>
<td>679 撇</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1094 螞</td>
<td>260 名</td>
<td>359 末</td>
<td>MAI 179 買</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAI 179 買</td>
<td>MO 68 沒</td>
<td>907 摩</td>
<td>982 米</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Character</td>
<td>582 排</td>
<td>1202 派</td>
<td>P’AO 41 泡</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>--------</td>
<td>--------</td>
<td>------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NUNG</td>
<td>1007</td>
<td>五</td>
<td>314 女</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NÜ</td>
<td>1140</td>
<td>于</td>
<td>1157 饿</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PAN</td>
<td>349 盤</td>
<td>650 盼</td>
<td>P’AN 229 盤</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PEI</td>
<td>80 備</td>
<td>156 盃</td>
<td>157 杯</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PI</td>
<td>88 敞</td>
<td>121 筆</td>
<td>350 必</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P’IEN</td>
<td>71 偏</td>
<td>588 片</td>
<td>704 便</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P’IN</td>
<td>603 蘋</td>
<td>1002 品</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PING</td>
<td>98 並</td>
<td>445 病</td>
<td>596 冰</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P’ING</td>
<td>177 瓶</td>
<td>278 平</td>
<td>603 蘋</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PO</td>
<td>593 菠</td>
<td>784 玻</td>
<td>881 波</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SHEN</td>
<td>SHENG</td>
<td>SHUI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P'O</td>
<td>678</td>
<td>334</td>
<td>574</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>色</td>
<td>士</td>
<td>破</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SHAI</td>
<td>376</td>
<td>454</td>
<td>830</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>色</td>
<td>式</td>
<td>簾</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SHAN</td>
<td>1031</td>
<td>510</td>
<td>1087</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>深</td>
<td></td>
<td>坡</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SHANG</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>639</td>
<td>352</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>生</td>
<td>失</td>
<td>不</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>盛</td>
<td>嗜</td>
<td>補</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>升</td>
<td>室</td>
<td>布</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>剩</td>
<td>食</td>
<td>步</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>牝</td>
<td></td>
<td>簟</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SAI</td>
<td>89</td>
<td>941</td>
<td>718</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>肺</td>
<td>省</td>
<td>鋪</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SAI</td>
<td>943</td>
<td>975</td>
<td>821</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>賞</td>
<td>經</td>
<td>普</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SAI</td>
<td>89</td>
<td>1034</td>
<td>460</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>86</td>
<td>勝</td>
<td>三</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P'U</td>
<td>908</td>
<td>1184</td>
<td>605</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>賞</td>
<td></td>
<td>葡</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1090</td>
<td>939</td>
<td>718</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SAI</td>
<td>324</td>
<td>941</td>
<td>821</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>商</td>
<td>省</td>
<td>普</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SAI</td>
<td>815</td>
<td>975</td>
<td>460</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>傷</td>
<td>經</td>
<td>605</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SAI</td>
<td>908</td>
<td>1034</td>
<td>1053</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>袋</td>
<td>勝</td>
<td>散</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SAO</td>
<td>349</td>
<td>110</td>
<td>833</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>少</td>
<td>什</td>
<td>107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SAO</td>
<td>702</td>
<td>180</td>
<td>1053</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>稍</td>
<td>錶</td>
<td>散</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SAO</td>
<td>994</td>
<td>226</td>
<td>507</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>紹</td>
<td>十</td>
<td>掃</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SÈ</td>
<td>590</td>
<td>245</td>
<td>507</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>舌</td>
<td>使</td>
<td>拭</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SÈ</td>
<td>707</td>
<td>247</td>
<td>460</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SÈ</td>
<td>333</td>
<td>303</td>
<td>460</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SÈ</td>
<td>321</td>
<td>1138</td>
<td>1137</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II71 私</td>
<td>II29 踏</td>
<td>TANG 48 當</td>
<td>524 燈</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------</td>
<td>--------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>--------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SU</td>
<td>TAI</td>
<td>725 擋</td>
<td>732 燈</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>136 訴</td>
<td>206 帶</td>
<td>1203 黨</td>
<td>883 騰</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>328 魚</td>
<td>554 袋</td>
<td>T’ANG 302 堂</td>
<td>1004 疼</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>893 俗</td>
<td>676 歹</td>
<td>372 糖</td>
<td>TI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>922 梳</td>
<td>914 戴</td>
<td>577 湯</td>
<td>1 第</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1064 素</td>
<td>957 待</td>
<td>752 躺</td>
<td>60 的</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUAN</td>
<td>T’AI</td>
<td>8.44 趨</td>
<td>270 弟</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>505 算</td>
<td>64 太</td>
<td>TAO 13 道</td>
<td>348 地</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUI</td>
<td>148 台</td>
<td>87 到</td>
<td>1175 抵</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>263 歲</td>
<td>503 抬</td>
<td>T’I</td>
<td>406 踢</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>365 隨</td>
<td>958 姿</td>
<td>222 刀</td>
<td>419 替</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>706 難</td>
<td>SUNG</td>
<td>250 倒</td>
<td>670 提</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58 送</td>
<td>58 送</td>
<td>1048 導</td>
<td>754 扶</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>609 宋</td>
<td>386 但</td>
<td>T’AO 606 萄</td>
<td>823 領</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TA</td>
<td>646 扣</td>
<td>1096 讨</td>
<td>934 體</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>83 大</td>
<td>787 擋</td>
<td>TIAO 525 掉</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>403 打</td>
<td>806 蛋</td>
<td>T’IAO</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1030 達</td>
<td>956 淡</td>
<td>525 掉</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T’A</td>
<td>1181 彈</td>
<td>TENG 54 等</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>63 他</td>
<td>T’AN</td>
<td>1172 德</td>
<td>224 調</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>194 她</td>
<td>439 談</td>
<td>523 條</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1089 塔</td>
<td>440 譚</td>
<td>TENG 1106 挑</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>742 炭</td>
<td>1162 跳</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>838 停</td>
<td>TS’A 782 擦</td>
<td>TSAO 482 早760 漬</td>
<td>TSU 1155 祖族1168 族</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TIU 521 丢</td>
<td>TASAI 29 在1144 造</td>
<td>TS’AO 257 草</td>
<td>TS’U 619 醋682 粗</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TO 236 多</td>
<td>TS’AI 49 再</td>
<td>TSÈ 648 責</td>
<td>TS’U 619 醋682 粗</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>898 染</td>
<td>TS’AI 91 才</td>
<td>TS’È 777 厕</td>
<td>TSUAN 892 鑽</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T’O 315 托</td>
<td>652 妥</td>
<td>1059 脫</td>
<td>1100 龜</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38 都</td>
<td>552 斗</td>
<td>592 豆</td>
<td>740 抖</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>344 頭</td>
<td>458 億</td>
<td>1173 投</td>
<td>1173 投</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TSA 1198 雜</td>
<td>187 雜</td>
<td>TS’ANG 489 髒</td>
<td>1198 雜</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TSANG 489 髒</td>
<td>TS’ANG 1092 蒼</td>
<td>489 髒</td>
<td>134 錯</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T'UNG</td>
<td>TZÜ</td>
<td>TZ'Ü</td>
<td>WA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>-----</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>頓</td>
<td>統</td>
<td>大</td>
<td>糱</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>84</td>
<td>295</td>
<td>695</td>
<td>918</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>懂</td>
<td>简</td>
<td>此</td>
<td>糱</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>117</td>
<td>471</td>
<td>此</td>
<td>糱</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>冬</td>
<td>桶</td>
<td>此</td>
<td>糱</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>366</td>
<td>483</td>
<td>此</td>
<td>糱</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>動</td>
<td>642</td>
<td>此</td>
<td>糱</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1083</td>
<td>847</td>
<td>此</td>
<td>糱</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>凍</td>
<td>229</td>
<td>此</td>
<td>糱</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T'UNG</td>
<td>TZÜ</td>
<td>TZ'Ü</td>
<td>WA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>295</td>
<td>115</td>
<td>695</td>
<td>糱</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>統</td>
<td>字</td>
<td>此</td>
<td>糱</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>471</td>
<td>子</td>
<td>此</td>
<td>糱</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>简</td>
<td>自</td>
<td>此</td>
<td>糱</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>483</td>
<td>姊</td>
<td>此</td>
<td>糱</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>642</td>
<td>滋</td>
<td>此</td>
<td>糱</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>847</td>
<td>望</td>
<td>此</td>
<td>糱</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>229</td>
<td>望</td>
<td>此</td>
<td>糱</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1151 郵又</td>
<td>YÜN 853 運</td>
<td>875 暈</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>217 YUNG</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16 用容</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>95 用容</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1111 用容</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| YÜ 79 預 |  
| 363 餘 |  
| 544 於魚 |  
| 580 魚 |  
| 804 雨 |  
| 807 苯 |  
| 894 語 |  
| 970 育 |  

| YÜAN 100 願 |  
| 280 遠 |  
| 478 遊園 |  
| 508 院 |  
| 960 綠 |  
| 1170 原園 |  
| 315  |  

| YÜEH 90 月越 |  
| 635 樂 |  
| 1159 樂 |  

New Delhi Library
"A book that is shut is but a block"

CENTRAL ARCHAEOLOGICAL LIBRARY

GOVT. OF INDIA
Department of Archaeology
NEW DELHI.

Please help us to keep the book clean and moving.

S. B., 148. N. DELHI.